

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

v92

Ephesians

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes **6**
Ephesians 6
Ephesians Introduction 6
Ephesians 1 9
Ephesians 2 35
Ephesians 3 60
Ephesians 4 83
Ephesians 5 118
Ephesians 6 151
Appendix: Translation Academy **178**
Abstract Nouns 178
Active or Passive 180
Apostrophe 182
Double Negatives 183
Doublet 185
Ellipsis 187
Exclamations 189
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ 191
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 192
Hendiadys 195
Hyperbole 197
Idiom 200
Irony 201
Litotes 203
Merism 204
Metaphor 205
Metonymy 211
Nominal Adjectives 212
Predictive Past 213
Personification 215
Simile 216
Synecdoche 218
Forms of You 219
Forms of ‘You’ — Singular 220
Connect — Contrast Relationship 222
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship 223
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship 225
Connecting Words and Phrases 227
Translating Son and Father 230
Blessings 232
How to Translate Names 234
Symbolic Action 237
Textual Variants 238
Translate Unknowns 240
Background Information 242
Introduction of a New Event 245
Introduction of New and Old Participants 247
Pronouns — When to Use Them 249
Appendix: Translation Words **252**
adoption, adopt, adopted 252
amen, truly 253
apostle, apostleship 254
authority 255
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief 256
beloved 258
blameless 258
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous 259
bless, blessed, blessing 260
bind, bond, bound 261
call, called, call out, called out 262
Christ, Messiah 262
church, Church 264
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision 265
cornerstone 266
covenant 267
cross 269

dominion 270
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect 271
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever 272
evangelist 273
evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant 274
exhort, exhortation 275
faith 275
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy 276
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry 277
fear, afraid, frighten 279
fool, foolish, folly 280
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned 281
Gentile 282
glory, glorious, glorify 282
God 284
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father 285
good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness 286
good news, gospel 288
grace, gracious 289
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly 290
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred 291
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit 292
hope, hoped 293
humble, humbled, humility 294
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him 295
inherit, inheritance, heir 296
Israel, Israelites 297
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus 298
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven 300
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God 301
lord, Lord, master, sir 303
love, beloved 304
mercy, merciful 306
pray, prayer 307
predestine, predestined 308
promise, promised 308
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess 309
psalm 311
reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation 311
redeem, redeemer, redemption 312
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness 313
saint 315
sanctify, sanctification 315
Satan, devil, evil one 316
save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue 317
Savior, savior 319
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 320
Son of God, the Son 321
soul, self 322
spirit, wind, breath 323
temple, house, house of God 324
trespass 325
will of God 326
wise, wisdom 327
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture 328
world, worldly 329
wrath, fury 330
Ephesus, Ephesian 331
Paul, Saul 331
Tychicus 332
admonish, warned, aware 333
age, aged, old, old age, years old 333
age, era, time 334
armor, armory 334
bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced 335
day 335
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee 336
breastplate, breastpiece 337
citizen, citizenship 337
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved 338

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels 338
courage, courageous, valor 339
create, created, creation, creator 339
deceive, lie, deception, illusion 340
doctrine, teaching, belief, beliefs, instruction, knowledge 341
drunk, drunkard 342
earth, land 342
envy, covet, jealous, jealousy 343
family, household 344
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication 344
foundation, founder, founded 345
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful 346
generation 347
hard, harder 348
heir 348
household, house 349
know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish 349
labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work 350
lust, lustful, passion, desire 351
manager, steward, stewardship 351
member, body part 352
might, mighty, mighty works 352
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded 353
multiply, multiplied, multiplication 354
mystery, hidden truth 355
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring 355
ordinance, regulation, requirement, strict law, custom 356
partial, partiality 356
patient, patience, impatient 357
peace, peaceful, peacemaker 357
perfect, complete 358
persevere, perseverance 359
pledge 359
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess 360
praise, praised, praiseworthy 361
provoke, provoked, provocation 362
quench, quenched, unquenchable 362
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader 363
sacrifice, offering 364
seal, sealed, unsealed 365
servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women 366
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach 368
shield 369
sword, swordsmen 370
teacher, Teacher 371
tremble, shake, shaken, quake 372
tribulation, distress, distresses, trouble 372
understand, understanding, thinking 373
vain, vanity 373
wine, wineskin, new wine 374

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Ephesians

Ephesians Introduction

Introduction to Ephesians

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Ephesians

1. Greeting and prayer for the spiritual blessings in Christ (1:1–23)
2. Sin and salvation (2:1–10)
3. Unity and peace (2:11–22)
4. Mystery of Christ in the believers, made known (3:1–13)
5. Prayer for riches of his glory to make the believers strong (3:14–21)
6. Unity of the Spirit, building up the Body of Christ (4:1–16)
7. New life (4:17–32)
8. Imitators of God (5:1–21)
9. 1 Wives and husbands; children and parents; slaves and masters (5:22–6:9)
10. Armor of God (6:10–20)
11. Final greeting (6:21–24)

Who wrote the book of Ephesians?

Paul wrote Ephesians. Paul was from the city of Tarsus. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he became a Christian, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus.

The Apostle Paul helped start the church in Ephesus on one of his trips. He also lived in Ephesus for a year and a half and helped the believers there. Paul probably wrote this letter while he was in prison in Rome.

What is the book of Ephesians about?

Paul wrote this letter to the Christians in Ephesus to explain God's love for them in Christ Jesus. He described the blessings that God was giving them because they were now united with Christ. He explained that all believers are united together, whether Jew or Gentile. Paul also wanted to encourage them to live in a way that pleases God.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Ephesians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Ephesus" or "A Letter to the Christians in Ephesus." (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was the "mystery" in the book of Ephesians?

The expression translated in the ULT as "mystery" or "hidden" occurs six times. By it, Paul always meant something that God had to reveal to human beings because they could not know it on their own. It always referred to something about how God planned to save mankind. Sometimes it was about his plan to bring about peace between himself and mankind. Sometimes it was more specifically about his plan to save both Jews and Gentiles by uniting them through Christ. This hidden truth was that Gentiles are now able to benefit from the promises of Christ as equals with the Jews.

What did Paul say about salvation and righteous living?

Paul said much about salvation and righteous living in this letter and in many of his letters. He said that God has been very kind and saved Christians because they believe in Jesus. Therefore, after they become Christians, they should live in a righteous way to show that they have faith in Christ. (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Singular and plural "you"

In this book, the word "I" refers to Paul. The word "you" is almost always plural and refers to the believers who may read this letter. The three exceptions to this are: 5:14, 6:2, and 6:3. (See: Forms of You)

What did Paul mean by the "new self" or the "new man"?

When Paul spoke of the "new self" or the "new man," he meant the new nature that a believer receives from the Holy Spirit. This new nature was created in God's image (See: 4:24). The phrase "new man" is also used for God bringing about peace between Jews and Gentiles. God brought them together as one people group that belong to him (See: 2:15).

How are the ideas of “holy” and “sanctify” represented in Ephesians in the ULT?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of several ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, the ULT uses the following principles:

- Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies moral holiness. Especially important for understanding the gospel is the use of “holy” to express the fact that God views Christians as sinless because they are united to Jesus Christ. Another use of “holy” is to express the idea that God is perfect and faultless. A third use is to express the idea that Christians are to conduct themselves in a blameless, faultless manner in life. In these cases, the ULT uses “holy,” “holy God,” “holy ones,” or “saints.” (See: 1:1, 4)

- Sometimes the meaning in a passage indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULT uses “saint” or “saints.”

- Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULT uses “set apart,” “dedicated to,” or “reserved for.” (See: 3:5)

The UST will often be helpful as translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions.

What did Paul mean by the expression “in Christ,” “in the Lord,” etc.?

This kind of expression occurs in 1:1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 20; 2:6, 7, 10, 13, 15, 16, 18, 21, 22; 3:5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 21; 4:1, 17, 21, 32; 5:8, 18, 19; 6:1, 10, 18, 21. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the believers. Please see the introduction to the book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major issues in the text of the book of Ephesians?

- “in Ephesus” (1:1). Some of the earliest manuscripts do not include this phrase. It is likely that Paul intended this letter to be read in many churches, including Ephesus and many other cities. He may have originally left a blank space for the city name to be filled in by those copying the letter and carrying it to different cities. But “Ephesus” is the only name found on manuscripts that have a city name. Therefore, the ULT, UST, and many modern versions include it.

- “because we are members of his body” (5:30). Most modern versions, including the ULT and UST, read in this way. Some older versions read, “because we are members of his body and of his bones.” Translators might decide to choose the second reading if other versions in their area have it that way. If translators choose the second reading, they should put the additional words inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that they are probably not original to the book of Ephesians.

(See: Textual Variants)

Ephesians 1

Ephesians 1 Introduction

Ephesians 1 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

“I pray”

Paul structures part of this chapter like a prayer of praise to God. But Paul is not just talking to God. He is teaching the church in Ephesus. He also tells the Ephesians how he is praying for them.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Predestination

Many scholars believe this chapter teaches on a subject known as “predestination.” See the use of the word “predestine” in 1:5, 11. Some scholars take this to indicate that God has, from before the foundation of the world, chosen some people to save. Christians have different views on what the Bible teaches on this subject, so translators need to take extra care when translating this chapter. (See: predestine, predestined)

Ephesians 1:1

ULT	UST
Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God, to the saints, the ones being [in Ephesus] and faithful in Christ Jesus.	*I am Paul. The Messiah Jesus sent me to represent him because that is what God wanted. I write this letter to the people whom God has set apart for himself who are living [in the city of Ephesus] and who are loyal to the Messiah Jesus.*

Paul names himself as the writer of this letter to the believers in the church at Ephesus (and elsewhere). Except where noted, all instances of "you" and "your" refer to the Ephesian believers as well as to all believers, and so are plural.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus … to the saints, the ones being**

UST I am Paul. The Messiah Jesus sent me to represent him … I write this letter to the people whom God has set apart for himself who are living

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and the intended audience. Alternate translation: [I, Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ … write this letter to you, God's holy people]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **in Christ Jesus**

UST to the Messiah Jesus

The phrase **in Christ Jesus** and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him, picturing believers as being surrounded by Christ. Alternate translation: [in close relationship to Christ Jesus]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Paul	Paul
apostle	sent me to represent him
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
God	God
will of God	that is what God wanted
saints	people whom God has set apart for himself
Ephesus	Ephesus
faithful	who are loyal
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
in Christ	to the Messiah Jesus

Ephesians 1:2

ULT	UST
Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.	*May God our Father and our Lord Jesus the Messiah continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful.*

ULT Grace to you and peace

UST continue to be kind to you and {make you} peaceful

This is a common greeting and blessing that Paul often uses in the beginning of his letters. Use a form in your language that makes it clear that this is a greeting and blessing.

Support Reference: Blessings

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Grace	continue to be kind
peace	peaceful
Father	Father
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 1:3

ULT	UST
Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the one having blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places in Christ,	*Praise God, the Father of our Lord Jesus the Messiah! He has blessed us with every kind of spiritual blessing that comes from heaven because we belong to the Messiah.*

In this book, unless otherwise stated, the words “us” and “we” refer to Paul, the believers in Ephesus, and all believers.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

This verse provides background information about the Ephesians to help readers understand their spiritual condition. Paul opens his letter by talking about the believers’ position and their safety before God.
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **Blessed {be} the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ**
UST Praise God, the Father of our Lord Jesus the Messiah

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [Let us praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the one having blessed us**
UST He has blessed us

Alternate translation: [for God has blessed us]

ULT **every spiritual blessing**
UST every kind of spiritual blessing

Alternate translation: [every blessing coming from the Spirit of God]

ULT **in the heavenly places**
UST that comes from heaven

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that the word **heavenly** refers to the place where God is. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [in the supernatural world]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in Christ**
UST because we belong to the Messiah

Here, **in Christ** could mean: (1) a metaphor referring to our close relationship with Christ. Alternate translation: [by uniting us with Christ] or [because we are united with Christ]; or (2) what Christ has done. Alternate translation: [through Christ] or [through what Christ has done]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Blessed	Praise
Father	God, the Father
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
blessed	blessed
blessing	blessing
spiritual	spiritual
heavenly	heaven
Christ	Messiah
in Christ	because we belong to the Messiah

Ephesians 1:4

ULT	UST
just as he chose us in him from the foundation of the world, for us to be holy and blameless before him. In love	*In fact, even before God created the world, he chose us to belong to the Messiah, so that the Messiah could make us completely holy for him. Because God loves us,*

ULT **holy and blameless**
UST completely holy

Paul uses the two similar words **holy** and **blameless** to emphasize moral goodness. If your language does not have two similar words, you can use one word for both, as in the UST.
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **blameless**
UST completely holy

The word **blameless** contains two negative ideas: "blame" or "fault," and "-less," which means "without." If it would be helpful in your language, the two negative ideas can be replaced with the corresponding positive idea, "perfect."
Support Reference: Double Negatives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he chose	he chose
foundation	God created
world	world
holy	holy
blameless	completely holy
love	loves

Ephesians 1:5

ULT	UST
he predestined us for adoption through Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,	*he decided long ago to adopt us as his own children by means of Jesus the Messiah. It pleased him to do this, so he did what he wanted to do.*

ULT he predestined … himself … his
UST he decided long ago … as his own children … so he did what he wanted to do

The words "he," "himself," and "his" refer to God.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT he predestined us for adoption
UST he decided long ago to adopt us

The word **us** refers to Paul, the Ephesian church, and all believers in Christ. Alternate translation: [God planned long ago to adopt us]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT he predestined us
UST he decided long ago … us

Alternate translation: [God chose us ahead of time] or [God chose us long ago]

ULT for adoption
UST to adopt

Here, **adoption** is a metaphor that refers to becoming part of God's family. Alternate translation: [to become his children]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT through Jesus Christ
UST by means of Jesus the Messiah

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that God brought believers into his family by the work of **Jesus Christ**. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
predestined	he decided long ago
adoption	adopt
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
good	It pleased him to do this

Ephesians 1:6

ULT	UST
to the praise of the glory of his grace that he has freely given us in the Beloved One,	*Because of this, we now praise God for being so amazingly kind to us, far beyond what we could deserve, as he blessed us by means of his Son whom he loves.*

ULT **he has freely given us in the Beloved One**
UST he blessed us by means of his Son whom he loves

Alternate translation: [he has kindly given to us by means of the One whom he loves]

ULT **the Beloved One**
UST his Son whom he loves

Alternate translation: [the One he loves, Jesus Christ] or [his Son, whom he loves]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
praise	praise
glory	amazingly
grace	for being so … kind to us, far beyond what we could deserve
Beloved	loves

Ephesians 1:7

ULT	UST
in whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of the trespasses, according to the riches of his grace,	*When Jesus died in our place, he paid the price for our sin. That is, when he died for us, God forgave us our sins because that is how abundantly and generously kind he is.*

ULT through his blood
UST When Jesus died in our place … when he died for us

The **blood** of Jesus is a metonym for his death. Alternate translation: [because he died]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT the riches of his grace
UST that is how abundantly and generously kind he is

Paul speaks of God's **grace** as if it were material wealth. Alternate translation: [greatness of God's grace] or [abundance of God's grace]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
redemption	paid the price for our sin
forgiveness	That is … God forgave us
trespasses	our sins
grace	kind

Ephesians 1:8

ULT	UST
which he caused to abound to us in all wisdom and understanding.	*God knew that we would need him to be extremely kind to us in this way because God knows everything and is completely wise.*

ULT which he caused to abound to us
UST God knew that we would need him to be extremely kind to us in this way

Alternate translation: [which he gave us in a great amount] or [being extremely kind to us]

ULT in all wisdom and understanding
UST because God knows everything and is completely wise

This could mean: (1) because he has all wisdom and understanding. (2) so that we might have great wisdom and understanding.

ULT wisdom and understanding
UST because God knows … and … wise

Here, **wisdom** and **understanding** mean very similar things. If your language does not have two similar words, you can use one word for both.
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he caused to abound	God knew that we would need him to be extremely kind … in this way
wisdom	wise
understanding	because God knows

Ephesians 1:9

ULT	UST
He made known to us the mystery of his will according to his good pleasure, which he had planned in him,	*In this way, God has now revealed to us his plan that he had not revealed to anyone before —a plan that he was pleased to accomplish through the work of the Messiah.*

ULT **according to his good pleasure**
UST a plan that he was pleased

This could mean: (1) because he wanted to make it known to us. (2) which was what he wanted.

ULT **which he had planned in him**
UST to accomplish through the work of the Messiah

Alternate translation: [as he demonstrated this purpose in Christ]

ULT **in him**
UST through the work of the Messiah

Alternate translation: [by means of Christ]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	In this way, God has now revealed
mystery	that he had not revealed to anyone before
of his will	his plan

Ephesians 1:10

ULT	UST
with a view to an administration of the fullness of time, to bring all the things together in Christ, the things in the heavens and the things on earth, in him,	*In this plan, when the time was just right, the Messiah would unite all things under himself so that all things in heaven and all things on earth would belong to the Messiah.*

ULT **with a view to an administration**
UST In this plan

A new sentence could be started here. Alternate translation: [He did this with a view to an administration] or [He did this, thinking about a stewardship]

ULT **of the fullness of time**
UST when the time was just right

Alternate translation: [when the time is right] or [at the time that he has appointed]

ULT **in him**
UST would belong to the Messiah

Alternate translation: [under his rule] or [under his authority]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an administration	this plan
time	time
Christ	Messiah
in Christ	the Messiah … under himself
heavens	heaven
earth	earth

Ephesians 1:11

ULT	UST
in whom we were also allotted as a possession. We were predestined according to the purpose of the one working out everything according to the counsel of his will,	*Because of what the Messiah has done, God has also claimed us as his own. He planned to do this long ago, and he always does exactly what he wishes to do.*

ULT **we were also allotted as a possession. We were predestined**
UST God has also claimed us as his own. He planned to do this long ago

Both pronouns **we** and **We** are inclusive in this verse. Paul is referring to all Christians, who were predestined to belong to Christ. In verses 12 and 13 he will divide this group into "we" (exclusive) Jewish Christians and "you" Gentile Christians.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **we were also allotted as a possession**
UST God has also claimed us as his own

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. This could mean: (1) God also chose us to be his possession. (2) God also chose us to be heirs.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **We were predestined**
UST He planned to do this long ago

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God chose us ahead of time] or [God chose us long ago]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
predestined	He planned to do this long ago
counsel	wishes to do
of his will	he wishes to do

Ephesians 1:12

ULT	UST
so that we, the ones having first hoped in Christ, would be for the praise of his glory.	*In God's plan, we Jews, who were the first to trust in the Messiah, would live to praise God because he is so great.*

ULT **we, the ones having first hoped in Christ**
UST we Jews, who were the first to trust in the Messiah

Here, the word **we** is exclusive and refers to the Jewish believers who first heard the good news, not the believers at Ephesus.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **so that we … would be for the praise of his glory**
UST In God's plan, we Jews … would live to praise God because he is so great

Alternate translation: [so that we … would live to praise him for his glory]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
praise	praise
glory	because … is so great
hoped	first to trust
Christ	Messiah
in Christ	in the Messiah

Ephesians 1:13

ULT	UST
In him, you also, having heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and having believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit,	*Then you non-Jews also heard the true message, the good news of how God saves you, and you believed in the Messiah. When you did that, God marked you as belonging to the Messiah by giving you the Holy Spirit, as he had promised to do.*

Paul has been speaking in the previous two verses about himself and the other Jewish believers, but now he begins speaking about the Ephesian believers.

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **the word of truth**

UST the true message

This could mean: (1) the message about the truth. (2) the true message.

ULT **were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit**

UST When you did that, God marked you … by giving you the Holy Spirit, as he had promised to do

In this metaphor Paul pictures the **Holy Spirit** as a seal, comparing him to the wax that was placed on a letter and stamped with a symbol representing the person who wrote the letter. Paul uses this custom as a picture to show how God has used the Holy Spirit to assure us that we belong to him. Alternate translation: [God has placed the Holy Spirit that he promised on you as if he were a seal]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **were sealed**

UST When you did that, God marked you … by giving you

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God has sealed you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gospel	good news
salvation	saves
believed	believed
sealed	When you did that, God marked you … by giving you
promised	promised
Holy Spirit	Holy Spirit

Ephesians 1:14

ULT	UST
who is a down payment of our inheritance until the redemption of the full possession, to the praise of his glory.	*The Holy Spirit is like a down payment that proves that God will also give to us everything else that he has promised to give to us at that time when he will release everything that he has for us. Praise God because he is so great!*

ULT **a down payment of our inheritance**

UST like a down payment that proves that God will also give to us everything else that he has promised to give to us

Receiving that which God has promised is spoken of in terms of one inheriting property or wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: [an initial portion that we will receive from what God has promised] or [a guarantee that we will receive what God has promised to give us]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a down payment	like a down payment that proves that God will also give
inheritance	everything else that he has promised to give
redemption	he will release
possession	everything that he has for us
praise	Praise
glory	because … is so great

Ephesians 1:15

ULT	UST
Because of this, I also, having heard about your faith in the Lord Jesus and the love for all the saints,	*Because God has done all of this for you, and because people have told me how you trust in the Lord Jesus and how much you love all the believers,*

ULT **Because of this**

UST Because God has done all of this for you

The connecting phrase **Because of this** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the Ephesians had believed the gospel and had been sealed by the Holy Spirit. The result is that Paul praises God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
faith	how you trust
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
in the Lord	in the Lord
love	love
saints	believers

Ephesians 1:16

ULT	UST
I have not stopped giving thanks for you, making mention of you in my prayers,	*I thank God for you constantly as I talk to God about you when I pray to him.*

ULT **I have not stopped giving thanks**
UST I thank God … constantly

Paul is using a figure of speech here that expresses a strongly positive meaning by using a negative word, **not**, together with an expression that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the positive meaning. Paul uses **not stopped** to emphasize that he continues to thank God. Alternate translation: [I continue to thank God]

Support Reference: Litotes

ULT **I have not stopped giving thanks**
UST I thank God … constantly

Paul uses this exaggeration to emphasize that he thanks God very often. Alternate translation: [I continue to thank God] or [I often thank God]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prayers	pray

Ephesians 1:17

ULT	UST
so that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, would give to you a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him,	*I pray that the God of our Lord Jesus the Messiah, the glorious Father, will give you his Spirit to make you wise and to reveal God to you so that you can continually know him better.*

ULT **so that**
UST I pray that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Paul prays for the Ephesians. The result is that God would enlighten the Ephesians about all that he has done for them through Christ. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him**
UST his Spirit to make you wise and to reveal God to you so that you can continually know him better

Alternate translation: [spiritual wisdom to understand his revelation]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
Father	Father
glory	glorious
spirit	Spirit
wisdom	wise
knowledge	know

Ephesians 1:18

ULT	UST
the eyes of your heart having been enlightened for you to know what is the hope of his calling and what are the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints,	*I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are so that you may know the wonderful plan that God has for us because he has called us to be his people. I pray that you may know how wonderful and abundant are the things he promises to give to us and to all the believers.*

ULT **the eyes of your heart having been enlightened**
UST I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are

Here, **heart** refers to a person's mind or thinking. Alternate translation: [that you may gain understanding]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the eyes of your heart having been enlightened**
UST I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [that God may give you understanding] or [that God may enlighten your mind]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the eyes of your heart**
UST I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are

The phrase **eyes of your heart** is a metaphor for one's ability to gain understanding. Alternate translation: [that you may gain understanding and be enlightened]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **having been enlightened**
UST I pray that God may enable you to see things as they truly are

Alternate translation: [may be made to see]

ULT **of his calling**
UST because he has called us to be his people

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that the **calling** of God refers to his choosing people to believe in him. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [that you have because he chose you to be his people]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **of his inheritance**
UST are the things he promises to give to us

Receiving what God has promised to believers is spoken of as if one were inheriting property and wealth from a family member.
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **the saints**
> UST and to all the believers

Alternate translation: [those whom he has set apart for himself] or [those who belong completely to him]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
hope	the wonderful plan that God has for us
calling	called
glory	wonderful
inheritance	are the things … promises to give to us
saints	and to all the believers

Ephesians 1:19

ULT	UST
and what is the incomparable greatness of his power toward us, the ones believing, according to the working of the force of his strength,	*And I pray that you will know how exceedingly powerfully God acts for us who believe in the Messiah. He is just as powerfully strong for us*

ULT **the incomparable greatness of his power**
UST you will know how exceedingly powerfully God acts

Alternate translation: [God's power, which is far beyond all other power]

ULT **toward us, the ones believing**
UST for us who believe in the Messiah

Alternate translation: [for us who believe]

ULT **the working of the force of his strength**
UST He is just as powerfully strong for us

Alternate translation: [his great power that is at work for us]

ULT **of the force of his strength**
UST He is … powerfully strong

The words **force** and **strength** have very similar meanings and may be combined. Alternate translation: [of his great strength]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
believing	believe

Ephesians 1:20

ULT	UST
which he worked in Christ, having raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places,	*as he was for the Messiah when he caused the Messiah to become alive again after he died, and raised him to the place of highest honor in heaven.*

ULT having raised him from the dead
UST when he caused the Messiah to become alive again after he died

Alternate translation: [when he made him alive again]

ULT from the dead
UST when he caused the Messiah to become alive again after he died

This expression describes all **dead** people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again. Alternate translation: [from among all those who have died]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT seated {him} at his right hand in the heavenly places
UST raised him to the place of highest honor in heaven

The one who sits at the **right hand** of a king sits at his right side and rules with all the authority of the king at whose right hand or side he sits. This is a metonym of location that represents the authority that the person in that location possesses. Alternate translation: [gave him all authority to rule from heaven]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT seated {him} at his right hand
UST raised him to the place of highest honor

To sit at the **right hand** of God is a symbolic action meaning “receiving great honor and authority from God.” Alternate translation: [seated him in the place of honor and authority beside him]
Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT in the heavenly places
UST in heaven

The word **heavenly** refers to the place where God is. See how you translated this in Ephesians 1:3.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Christ	Messiah
in Christ	for the Messiah
heavenly	heaven

Ephesians 1:21

ULT	UST
far above all rule and authority and power and dominion and every name being named, not only in this age, but also in the one coming.	*The Messiah rules as supreme there over every ruler and powerful spirit on every level of authority and over every being that people revere. He rules over them not only now, but forever.*

ULT **far above all rule and authority and power and dominion**
UST The Messiah rules as supreme there over every ruler and powerful spirit on every level of authority

These are all terms for the ranks of supernatural beings, both angelic and demonic. If your language does not have four different terms for rulers or authorities, you can combine them.
Alternate translation: [far above all types of supernatural beings]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **every name being named**
UST over every being that people revere

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. This could mean: (1) every name that man gives. (2) every name that God gives.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **name**
UST being that people revere

Here, **name** could refer to: (1) a title. (2) a position of authority.

ULT **in this age**
UST now

Alternate translation: [at this time]

ULT **in the one coming**
UST forever

Alternate translation: [in the future]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rule	ruler
authority	powerful spirit
dominion	on every level of authority
age	now

Ephesians 1:22

ULT	UST
And he put all things under his feet and gave him as head over all things to the church,	*God has made everything to be subject to the Messiah and has appointed the Messiah as the ruler over everything among all believers everywhere.*

ULT **under his feet**
UST God has made … to be subject to the Messiah

Here, **feet** represents Christ's lordship, authority, and power. Alternate translation: [under Christ's power]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **head over all things**
UST the ruler over everything

Here, **head** is a metaphor that refers to the leader or the one who is in charge. Alternate translation: [ruler over all things]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
church	among all believers everywhere

Ephesians 1:23

ULT	UST
which is his body, the fullness of the one filling all in all.	*We believers relate to the Messiah as the parts of a person's body relate to its head. He supplies what is lacking for all believers just as he completes everything everywhere.*

ULT **his body**
UST the Messiah as the parts of a person's body relate to its head

Just as the head (verse 22) rules all things pertaining to a human body, so Christ is the head of the church **body**.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the fullness of the one filling all in all**
UST He supplies what is lacking for all believers just as he completes everything everywhere

Alternate translation: [for Christ fills the church with his life and power just as he gives life to all things]

ULT **the fullness**
UST He supplies what is lacking for all believers

This could have: (1) a passive sense, which would mean that Christ fills or completes the church. (2) an active sense, which would mean that the church completes Christ (as a body completes a head).
Support Reference: Active or Passive

Ephesians 2

Ephesians 2 Introduction

Ephesians 2 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter focuses on the life that a Christian had before coming to believe in Jesus. Paul then uses this information to explain how a person's former way of living is distinct from a Christian's new identity "in Christ." (See: faith)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

One body

Paul teaches about the church in this chapter. The church is made of two different groups of people (Jews and Gentiles). They are now one group or "body." The church is also known as the body of Christ. Jews and Gentiles are united in Christ.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

"Dead in trespasses and sins"

Paul teaches that those who are not Christians are "dead" in their sin. Sin binds or enslaves them. This makes them spiritually "dead." Paul writes that God makes Christians alive in Christ. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning; and faith; and Metaphor)

Descriptions of worldly living

Paul uses many different ways to describe how non-Christians act. They "lived according to the ways of this world" and are "living according to the ruler of the authorities of the air," "fulfilling the evil desires of our sinful nature," and "carrying out the desires of the body and of the mind."

"It is the gift of God"

Some scholars believe "it" here refers to being saved. Other scholars believe that it is faith that is the gift of God. Because of how the Greek tenses agree, "it" here probably refers to both things: the gift is that we are saved by God's grace through faith.

Flesh

"Flesh" is sometimes used as a metaphor for a person's sinful nature. The phrase "Gentiles in the flesh" indicates the Ephesians once lived without any concern for God. But "flesh" is also used in this verse to refer to the physical person, similar to "body part of man."

Ephesians 2:1

ULT	UST
And you were dead in your trespasses and sins,	*Before you trusted the Messiah, you were spiritually dead—you were unable to stop sinning.*

Paul reminds the believers of their past and the way they now are before God.

ULT **you were dead in your trespasses and sins**
UST you were spiritually dead—you were unable to stop sinning

This shows how the inability of a sinful person to obey God is similar to a **dead** person's inability to respond physically. Alternate translation: [you were spiritually dead, unable to do anything but sin]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in your trespasses and sins**
UST you were unable to stop sinning

The words **trespasses** and **sins** have similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize the greatness of the people's sin. If your language has just one word for this, the two words can be combined. Alternate translation: [your many sins]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **in your trespasses and sins**
UST you were unable to stop sinning

The words **trespasses** and **sins** are abstract nouns that represent actions. You could use an adjective or a verb for this if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [because of the sinful things that you did] or [because you were always sinning against God]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
trespasses	you were unable to stop sinning
sins	sinning

Ephesians 2:2

ULT	UST
in which you once walked according to the age of this world, according to the ruler of the authorities of the air, the spirit that is now working in the sons of disobedience,	*You used to live in a sinful way, guided by the spirit of this world. You were guided by the ruler of the evil spirits, who controls the authorities of this world. This ruler is Satan, who now works through the people who disobey God.*

ULT **in which you once walked**
UST You used to live in a sinful way

Here, “walk” is a metaphor for the way a person lives. Alternate translation: [which is how you lived] or [which you did habitually]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **according to the age of this world**
UST guided by the spirit of this world

The apostles often used **world** to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. Alternate translation: [according to the values of people living in the world] or [following the principles of this present world]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the ruler of the authorities of the air**
UST the ruler of the evil spirits, who controls the authorities of this world

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that this phrase refers to the devil or Satan. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Satan, the ruler of the authorities of the air]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the spirit that is now working**
UST This ruler is Satan, who now works

Alternate translation: [the spirit of Satan, who is currently working]

ULT **the sons of disobedience**
UST the people who disobey God

Alternate translation: [people who routinely disobey God]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
age	spirit
world	world
ruler	ruler
authorities	authorities
spirit	This ruler is Satan

Ephesians 2:3

ULT	UST
in which we all also once lived in the evil desires of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the body and of the minds. And we were by nature children of wrath, as also the rest.	*All of us used to live in the same way as these people who disobey God; we did the evil things that we desired, things that would bring pleasure to our bodies and our minds. We deserved that God should be very angry with us, just as he is with the other people.*

ULT **the desires of the body and of the minds**
UST things that would bring pleasure to our bodies and our minds

The words **body** and **minds** represent the entire person. Alternate translation: [the selfish things that people want to do]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **children of wrath**
UST We deserved that God should be very angry with us

Alternate translation: [people with whom God is angry]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
desires	desired
minds	minds
wrath	We deserved that God should be very angry with us

Ephesians 2:4

ULT	UST
But God being rich in mercy because of his great love with which he loved us,	*But God is very merciful to us because he loves us very much.*

ULT **But**
UST But

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. The love and mercy of God is in sharp contrast to the evil way the Ephesians lived before they believed in God.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **God being rich in mercy**
UST God is very merciful to us

The word **mercy** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: [God is abundantly merciful] or [God is very kind to us]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **because of his great love with which he loved us**
UST because he loves us very much

The word **love** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: [because he loved us so very much]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
mercy	merciful
love	loves
loved	loves

Ephesians 2:5

ULT	UST
and we being dead in the trespasses, he made us alive together in Christ—by grace you have been saved—	*God loved us so much that even when we were spiritually dead and constantly sinning, he made us alive by joining us to the Messiah. Remember, when God saved you from being spiritually dead, he was being very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve.*

ULT **by grace you have been saved**
UST when God saved you from being spiritually dead, he was being very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God saved you by being gracious to you]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **by grace you have been saved**
UST when God saved you from being spiritually dead, he was being very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve

The word **grace** is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: [God saved you by being extremely kind to you] or [God saved you as a free gift]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
trespasses	and constantly sinning
Christ	Messiah
in Christ	to the Messiah
grace	God … was being very kind to you in a way that … did not deserve
saved	saved

Ephesians 2:6

ULT	UST
and raised us up with him and seated us with him in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus,	*God saved us from being spiritually dead just as he raised Jesus from being physically dead and he made us spiritually alive with him. Then he gave us seats of honor to rule with the Messiah Jesus in heaven.*

ULT **raised us up with him**
UST God saved us from being spiritually dead just as he raised Jesus from being physically dead and he made us spiritually alive with him

Here, **raised up** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again.
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **raised us up with him**
UST God saved us from being spiritually dead just as he raised Jesus from being physically dead and he made us spiritually alive with him

This could mean: (1) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, God has already given Paul and the believers in Ephesus new spiritual life. Alternate translation: [God has given us new life because we belong to Christ]; or (2) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, the believers in Ephesus can know that after they die they will live with Christ, and Paul can speak of the believers living again as if it has already happened. Alternate translation: [we can be sure that God will give us life just as he has caused Christ to come alive again]
Support Reference: Predictive Past

ULT **seated us with him**
UST he gave us seats of honor to rule

Paul talks about the believers as already **seated** in heaven with Christ because, although it is something that will happen in the future, it was guaranteed by what Christ did in the past. Alternate translation: [it is as though God has already seated us next to Christ]
Support Reference: Predictive Past

ULT **in the heavenly places**
UST in heaven

The phrase **heavenly places** refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in Ephesians 1:3. Alternate translation: [in the supernatural world]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in Christ Jesus**
UST with the Messiah Jesus

The phrase **in Christ Jesus** and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavenly	heaven
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
in Christ	with the Messiah Jesus

Ephesians 2:7

ULT	UST
so that in the ages that are coming he might show the immeasurably great riches of his grace in his kindness to us in Christ Jesus.	*He did that to show to everyone in all future times how exceedingly gracious he is in being kind to us by joining us to the Messiah Jesus.*

ULT **so that**
UST He did that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of God raising up believers and seating them in heaven with Christ is to show the extent of his grace in Christ.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **in the ages that are coming**
UST in all future times

Alternate translation: [in the future]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ages	all future times
grace	gracious
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
in Christ	by joining us to the Messiah Jesus

Ephesians 2:8

ULT	UST
For by grace you have been saved through faith, and this is not from yourselves; it is the gift of God,	*So God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve when he saved you from being spiritually dead. He did this because you trust in Jesus. You have not saved yourselves; this is a gift from God—*

ULT **For**
UST So

The connecting word **For** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the Ephesians had been saved by God and not by their own good works. The result is that people would see the grace of God to us in Christ. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **For by grace you have been saved through faith**
UST So God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve when he saved you from being spiritually dead. He did this because you trust in Jesus

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God saved you by grace because of your faith in him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **For by grace you have been saved**
UST So God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve when he saved you from being spiritually dead

See how you translated this phrase in Ephesians 2:5.
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **this is**
UST You have not saved yourselves

The pronoun **this** refers back to **by grace you have been saved by faith**.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grace	God was very kind to you in a way that you did not deserve
saved	saved
faith	you trust in Jesus
God	God

Ephesians 2:9

ULT	UST
not from works, so that no one may boast.	*a gift that no one can earn, so no one can boast and say that he has saved himself.*

ULT **not from works, so that no one may boast**

UST a gift that no one can earn, so no one can boast and say that he has saved himself

Paul is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You could supply these words from earlier in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. You may want to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [Salvation does not come from works, so that no one may boast] or [God does not save a person because of what that person does, so no one can boast and say that he earned his salvation]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **so that**

UST so

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of God for saving believers by grace instead of by their works is that no person might boast, speaking as if they saved themselves.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Ephesians 2:10

ULT	UST
For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus for good works that God prepared beforehand, so that we would walk in them.	*So God is making us what he wants us to be; through the Messiah Jesus he has created us as new people to do good things—things that God had previously arranged for us to do.*

ULT **For**
UST So

The connecting word **For** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that God is the one who created us to do any good works that we do. The result is that people cannot boast. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **in Christ Jesus**
UST through the Messiah Jesus

The phrase **in Christ Jesus** and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **so that**
UST for

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of God creating us as he did is that we would do the good works that he intended for us to do.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **we would walk in them**
UST us to do

To **walk** on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Here, **in them** refers to the **good works**. Alternate translation: [we would always and continually do those good deeds]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
created	created
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
in Christ	through the Messiah Jesus
good	good
God	God

Ephesians 2:11

ULT	UST
Therefore, remember that once you were Gentiles in the flesh, the ones being called "uncircumcised" by the ones being called "circumcised" in the flesh, performed by human hands.	*So remember that previously you non-Jewish people according to who your ancestors were did not belong to God's people. The Jews insulted you by calling you "the uncircumcised." They call themselves "the circumcised." By this they mean that they, not you, are God's people, although circumcision is something that humans do that only changes the body, not something that God does that changes the spirit.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST So

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that they were saved by God and not by anything they had done on their own. The result is that the Ephesians would remember that they were once separated from God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **were Gentiles in the flesh**
UST non-Jewish people according to who your ancestors were did not belong to God's people

Here, **Gentiles** refers to people who were not born Jewish.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **uncircumcised**
UST uncircumcised

Non-Jewish people were not circumcised as babies, so the Jews considered them people who do not follow any of God's laws. Alternate translation: [uncircumcised pagans]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **circumcised**
UST the circumcised

This was another term for Jewish people because all male infants were **circumcised**. Alternate translation: [circumcised people]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **by the ones being called**
UST They call themselves

You can translate this with an active form. Alternate translation: [by what people call] or [by those whom people call]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Gentiles	non-Jewish people … did not belong to God's people
uncircumcised	uncircumcised
circumcised	circumcised

Ephesians 2:12

ULT	UST
For at that time you were apart from Christ, excluded from the community of Israel, and strangers to the covenants of the promise, having no hope and without God in the world.	*Remember that, at that time, you were separated from the Messiah. You were foreigners to the people of Israel. You did not share in the things that God promised in his agreements with them. You did not confidently expect that God would save you. No, you were living in this world completely without God.*

ULT **For**
UST Remember that

The connecting word **For** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that they were not part of the Jews, who were circumcised. The result is that the Gentile Ephesians were separated from God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **apart from Christ**
UST separated from the Messiah

Alternate translation: [unbelievers]

ULT **strangers to the covenants of the promise**
UST You did not share in the things that God promised in his agreements with them

Paul speaks to the Gentile believers as if they had been foreigners, kept out of the land of God's **covenants** and **promise**.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
time	time
Christ	Messiah
community	people
Israel	Israel
covenants	in his agreements with them
promise	promised
hope	You did not confidently expect that God would save you
world	world

Ephesians 2:13

ULT	UST
But now in Christ Jesus you, the ones once being far away have been brought near by the blood of Christ.	*But now, because you have trusted in Jesus the Messiah, God has brought you into his family, even though before that you did not know him. This was possible because the Messiah died on the cross for you.*

ULT **But**
UST But

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. The current condition of the Ephesian Gentile believers, after they believed in Christ, is that they are near to God. That is in contrast to their previous condition, before they believed in Christ, of being separated from God.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **you, the ones once being far away have been brought near by the blood of Christ**
UST God has brought you into his family … before that you did not know him. This was possible because the Messiah died on the cross for you

Not belonging to God due to sin is spoken of as **being far away** from God. Belonging to God because of **the blood of Christ** is spoken of as being **brought near** to God. Alternate translation: [you who once did not belong to God now belong to God because of the blood of Christ]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **by the blood of Christ**
UST This was possible because the Messiah died on the cross for you

The **blood of Christ** is a metonym for his death. Alternate translation: [by Christ's death] or [when Christ died for us]

Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
in Christ	in Jesus
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 2:14

ULT	UST
For he himself is our peace, the one having made the two one and destroyed in his flesh the middle wall of partition, the hostility.	*It is the Messiah who has made it possible for Jews and non-Jews to live peacefully with each other. He made the two separate groups into one group. The two groups hated each other, but he took away every reason for hating each other when he died for all of us.*

ULT **For**

The connecting word **For** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Christ himself joined them to the Jewish believers. The result is that the Ephesian Gentile believers were brought near to God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **he himself is our peace**

UST It is the Messiah who has made it possible for Jews and non-Jews to live peacefully with each other

Alternate translation: [Jesus gives us his peace]

ULT **our peace**

UST Jews and non-Jews to live peacefully with each other

The word **our** refers to Paul and his readers and so, it is inclusive.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **the one having made the two one**

UST He made the two separate groups into one group

Alternate translation: [who made the Jews and Gentiles one]

ULT **in his flesh**

UST when he died for all of us

The phrase **his flesh**, his physical body, is a metonym for his body dying. Alternate translation: [by the death of his body on the cross]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the middle wall of partition, the hostility**

UST The two groups hated each other … every reason for hating each other

The **hostility** between the Jews and Gentiles is compared to a **wall**. Alternate translation: [the hostility that was like a wall that separated them]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
peace	to live peacefully with each other

Ephesians 2:15

ULT	UST
He abolished the law of the commandments in regulations so that he might make the two into one new man in himself, making peace,	*He made it no longer necessary for us to obey the commandments and requirements of the Jewish law for him to accept us. He did this in order to make the Jews and the non-Jews into one new people who would live peacefully together because of their relationship to him.*

ULT **He abolished the law of the commandments in regulations**
UST He made it no longer necessary for us to obey the commandments and requirements of the Jewish law for him to accept us

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that Jesus' blood satisfies the law of Moses so that both the Jews and Gentiles can live at peace in God. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [He took away the requirements in the law of Moses]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **so that**
UST He did this in order to

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Christ in abolishing the law was to join the Jews and the Gentiles together into one group.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **one new man**
UST one new people

Paul talks about the unity of Jews and Gentiles as if they had become **one** person. Alternate translation: [a single new people]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in himself**
UST because of their relationship to him

Being joined to Christ is what makes reconciliation possible between Jews and Gentiles. Paul describes this relationship as though Christ surrounded all of us. Alternate translation: [because he made it possible]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
law	law
regulations	requirements
peace	who would live peacefully together

Ephesians 2:16

ULT	UST
and so that he might reconcile both to God as one body through the cross, putting to death the hostility in it.	*He did this in order to reconcile both groups to God as one group by dying on the cross for all of them. By dying for them, Jesus made it possible for them to stop being enemies to each other and to God.*

ULT **so that he might reconcile both**
UST reconcile both groups

Alternate translation: [so that Christ might bring the Jews and the Gentiles together in peace]

ULT **as one body**
UST as one group

The church is often pictured as the **body** of Christ, who is its head. Here it is comprised of both Jews and Gentiles.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **through the cross**
UST by dying on the cross for all of them

The **cross** here represents Christ's death on the cross. Alternate translation: [by means of Christ's death on the cross]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **putting to death the hostility**
UST Jesus made it possible for them to stop being enemies to each other and to God

Ending their **hostility** is spoken of as if Christ killed their hostility. By dying on the cross, Jesus eliminated the reason for Jews and Gentiles to be hostile toward each other. Neither are now required to live according to the law of Moses. Alternate translation: [stopping them from hating one another]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
reconcile	reconcile
God	God
cross	cross

Ephesians 2:17

ULT	UST
And he came and proclaimed peace to you, the ones far away and peace to the ones near,	*Jesus came and announced the good news that we can be at peace with God; he announced this to you non-Jews, who did not know about God, and to us Jews, who did know about God.*

ULT and proclaimed peace

UST and announced the good news that we can be at peace with God; he announced

Paul tells the Ephesians that Gentile believers are also now just as much a part of God's people as are Jewish believers. The Jewish apostles and prophets are theirs, as is Christ, and they all form a temple for God in the Spirit. Alternate translation: [and announced the gospel of peace] or [declaring the gospel of peace]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT to you, the ones far away

UST to you non-Jews, who did not know about God

Paul pictures the Gentiles (non-Jews), who were not part of God's people, as though they were physically distant from God.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT to the ones near

UST to us Jews, who did know about God

Paul pictures the Jews, who were God's people by birth, as though they were physically close to God.

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and proclaimed	good news
peace	peace
peace	this

Ephesians 2:18

ULT	UST
for through him both have access in one Spirit to the Father.	*Because of what Jesus did for us, both Jews and non-Jews now can come to God the Father with the help of God's Spirit.*

ULT **for through him both have access**
UST Because of what Jesus did for us, both Jews and non-Jews now can come

Here, **both** refers to Paul and the rest of the believing Jews, and it also refers to the believing non-Jews.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **for**
UST Because of

The connecting word **for** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that he himself is the one who enabled both Jew and Gentile to come to the Father. The result is that Christ proclaimed peace to both the Jews and the Gentiles. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **in one Spirit**
UST with the help of God's Spirit

The implication is that all believers, both Jewish and Gentile, are enabled to enter into the presence of God the Father by the same Holy **Spirit**. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [by means of the same Spirit]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Spirit
Father	God the Father

Ephesians 2:19

ULT	UST
So then, you are no longer strangers and foreigners. Instead, you are fellow citizens with the saints and members of the household of God,	*Therefore now you non-Jews are no longer left out of God's people, but instead you are fellow members with those whom God has set apart for himself, and you belong to God's family.*

ULT **So then**
UST Therefore now

The connecting phrase **So then** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Christ gave them access to God through the Spirit. The result is that the Ephesian believers are no longer separated from God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **strangers and foreigners**
UST left out of God's people

The words **strangers** and **foreigners** have very similar meanings and may be combined. Alternate translation: [people who had no relationship to God]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **Instead**
UST but instead

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. The previous separation of the Ephesians from God is in contrast to their current status as citizens of the kingdom of God and members of his household.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **you are fellow citizens with the saints and {members} of the household of God**
UST you are fellow members with those whom God has set apart for himself, and you belong to God's family

Paul is again speaking of the spiritual condition of Gentiles after they become believers as he would speak about foreigners becoming **citizens** of a different nation.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
citizens	fellow members with
saints	whom God has set apart for himself
household	you belong to … family
God	God's

Ephesians 2:20

ULT	UST
having been built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Christ Jesus himself being the cornerstone,	*You are like stones that God has put together into a building, and the apostles and prophets are like the foundation stones of that building. You depend on what they have taught, just as building stones depend on the foundation stones below them to form a wall that is upright and strong. The Messiah Jesus himself is like the cornerstone, which is the most important stone of the building.*

ULT **been built on the foundation**

UST You are like stones that God has put together into a building … are like the foundation stones of that building. You depend on what they have taught, just as building stones depend on the foundation stones below them to form a wall that is upright and strong

Paul speaks of God's people as if they were a building. Christ is the cornerstone, the apostles are the **foundation**, and the believers are the structure. Alternate translation: [you depend on the teaching]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **been built**

UST You are like stones that God has put together into a building … You … just as building stones … to form a wall that is upright and strong

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God has built you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
foundation	foundation
apostles	apostles
prophets	prophets
cornerstone	cornerstone
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus

Ephesians 2:21

ULT	UST
in whom the whole building, being fit together, grows into a holy temple in the Lord,	*Jesus determines where each person belongs, just as the cornerstone determines where each stone fits in the building. Just as a builder joins stones together to make a holy temple, Jesus is assembling his family of believers to be one holy group which serves the Lord.*

ULT **the whole building, being fit together, grows into a holy temple**

UST the building. Just as a builder joins stones together to make a holy temple, Jesus is assembling his family of believers to be one holy group

Paul continues to speak of Christ's family as if it were a **building**. In the same way that a builder fits stones together while building, so Christ is fitting us together. Alternate translation: [all of us, as we grow together, become a holy group that worships God]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in whom … in the Lord**

UST Jesus determines where each person belongs, just as the cornerstone determines where each stone fits in … which serves the Lord

These metaphors express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him. Alternate translation: [In Christ … in the Lord Jesus]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
temple	temple
holy	holy
Lord	Lord
in the Lord	which serves the Lord

Ephesians 2:22

ULT	UST
in whom you also are being built together into a dwelling place for God in the Spirit.	*Because you belong to Jesus, he is building you up together, both Jews and non-Jews, into one family that is like a building in which God lives by means of his Spirit.*

ULT **in whom**
UST Because you belong to Jesus

You can translate this as “in Christ,” which is a metaphor that expresses the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **you also are being built together into a dwelling place for God in the Spirit**
UST he is building you up together, both Jews and non-Jews, into one family that is like a building in which God lives by means of his Spirit

This describes how believers are being put together to become a **place** where **God** will permanently live through the power of the Holy **Spirit**. Alternate translation: [you also are being joined to this group where God lives by his Spirit]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **you also are being built together**
UST he is building you up together, both Jews and non-Jews

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God is also building you together]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Spirit	Spirit

Ephesians 3

Ephesians 3 Introduction

Ephesians 3 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

“I pray”

Paul structures part of this chapter as a prayer to God. But Paul is not just talking to God. He is both praying for and instructing the church in Ephesus.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Mystery

Paul refers to the church as a “mystery.” The role of the church in the plans of God was once not known. But God has now revealed it. Part of this mystery involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God.

Ephesians 3:1

ULT	UST
For this reason I, Paul, the prisoner of Christ Jesus on behalf of you Gentiles,	*Because God is working out this plan for you non-Jews, I, Paul, pray to the Father for you, even as I am in prison because I serve the Messiah Jesus for your sake.*

ULT **For this reason**
UST Because God is working out this plan for you

To make clear the hidden truth about the church to believers, Paul refers back to the oneness of Jews and Gentiles and how believers from both groups form part of the one group that worships God, like the stones that form one temple. The connecting phrase **For this reason** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is what Paul talked about in Chapter 2, that Christ showed his grace by removing the division between Jews and Gentiles and making them into one group. The result is that Paul prays for the Gentiles. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. Alternate translation: [This is why]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **For this reason**
UST Because God is working out this plan for you

You may need to make explicit what the reason is. Alternate translation: [Because of God's grace to you,] You may also need to make explicit here what the result is, as in the UST, because Paul does not state the result, that he prays for them, until 3:14.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the prisoner of Christ Jesus**
UST even as I am in prison because I serve the Messiah Jesus

Alternate translation: [the one who is in prison because I serve Christ Jesus]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Paul	Paul
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
Gentiles	non-Jews

Ephesians 3:2

ULT	UST
if indeed you have heard of the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you,	*I assume that people have told you about me, that God has given me the task of communicating to you non-Jews his plan to be extremely kind to you.*

ULT **the stewardship of the grace of God that was given to me for you**
UST about me … God has given me the task of communicating to you non-Jews his plan to be extremely kind to you

Here, **grace** could mean: (1) the gift of the gospel that Paul is bringing to the Gentiles. Alternate translation: [the responsibility that God gave me to bring his grace to you]; or (2) the gift to Paul of being the steward of the gospel for the Gentiles. Alternate translation: [the responsibility that God graciously gave me for your benefit]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
stewardship	the task of communicating … his plan
grace	to be extremely kind
God	God

Ephesians 3:3

ULT	UST
according to a revelation made known to me, the mystery about which I already wrote in brief.	*God told me this message that people did not understand before by revealing it to me directly, just as I wrote to you before briefly.*

ULT **according to a revelation made known to me**
UST God told me … by revealing it to me directly

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [according to what God revealed to me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **about which I already wrote in brief**
UST just as I wrote to you before briefly

Paul refers here to another letter that he had written to these people.

Support Reference: Background Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	God told
mystery	this message that people did not understand before

Ephesians 3:5

ULT	UST
which in other generations was not made known to the sons of men as it now has been revealed by the Spirit to his holy apostles and prophets—	*Formerly, God did not fully reveal this message to people, but now his Spirit has revealed it to his holy apostles and prophets.*

ULT **which in other generations was not made known to the sons of men**
UST Formerly, God did not fully reveal this message to people … it

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God did not make these things known to people in the past]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **as it now has been revealed by the Spirit**
UST but now his Spirit has revealed

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [but now the Spirit has revealed it] or [but now the Spirit has made it known]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
generations	Formerly
known	God did … fully reveal
holy	holy
apostles	apostles
prophets	prophets
Spirit	Spirit

Ephesians 3:6

ULT	UST
that the Gentiles are to be fellow heirs and fellow members of the body, and fellow partakers of the promise in Christ Jesus through the gospel,	*The message is this: the non-Jews now share together with Jews the spiritual riches of God and belong to the same group of God's people and will share all the things God has promised to his people because they are joined to the Messiah Jesus as a result of believing the good news.*

ULT **that the Gentiles are to be fellow heirs … through the gospel**

UST The message is this: the non-Jews now share together with Jews the spiritual riches of God … as a result of believing the good news

Paul assumes that his readers will understand **that the Gentiles are to be fellow heirs**. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. This is the hidden truth that Paul began to explain in the previous verse. The **Gentiles** who receive Christ also receive everything that the Jewish believers receive from God.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **fellow members of the body**

UST belong to the same group of God's people

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that **Gentiles** are to be **fellow members of the body**. The church is often referred to as "the body of Christ." You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [members of the body of Christ]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in Christ Jesus**

UST they are joined to the Messiah Jesus

The phrase **in Christ Jesus** and similar expressions are metaphors that frequently occur in the New Testament letters. They express the strongest kind of relationship possible between Christ and those who believe in him.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **through the gospel**

UST as a result of believing the good news

This could mean: (1) because of the **gospel**, the Gentiles are fellow sharers in the promise. (2) because of the **gospel**, the Gentiles are fellow heirs and members of the body and fellow sharers in the promise.

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Gentiles	non-Jews
heirs	now share together with Jews the spiritual riches of God
promise	promised
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
in Christ	they are joined to the Messiah Jesus
gospel	good news

Ephesians 3:8

ULT	UST
To me—the least of all the saints—this grace was given, to preach to the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ,	*Although I am the least worthy of all of God's people, God kindly gave me this gift: he appointed me to proclaim to the non-Jews the good news about the unending spiritual blessings that the Messiah has for us*

ULT **unsearchable**
UST unending

Paul speaks of everything that Christ offers as something so physically vast that it cannot be fully explored. Alternate translation: [unable to be completely known]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **riches of Christ**
UST spiritual blessings that the Messiah has for us

Paul speaks of the truth about **Christ** and the blessings he brings as if they were material wealth.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
saints	of God's people
grace	kindly … this gift
Gentiles	to the non-Jews
to preach	good news
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 3:9

ULT	UST
and to reveal for everyone what is the administration of the mystery that was hidden from the ages in God, the one having created all things,	*and to enable everyone to understand what God's plan is. This plan is something that God, who created everything, has kept hidden from long ago.*

> ULT **of the mystery that was hidden from the ages in God, the one having created all things**
>
> UST This plan is something that God, who created everything, has kept hidden from long ago

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [of God, who created all things, kept this plan hidden for long ages in the past]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
administration	God's plan
mystery	This plan is something
ages	long ago
God	God
created	created

Ephesians 3:10

ULT	UST
so that now through the church the multifaceted wisdom of God might be made known to the rulers and to the authorities in the heavenly places,	*God hid this plan so that as he reveals it now by making it happen in those who believe, he also reveals to the spiritual authorities at the highest levels how profoundly wise he is.*

ULT **so that**
UST hid this plan so that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of God revealing the mystery of the church to Paul is to enable the rulers in the heavenly places to see the wisdom of God.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **the multifaceted wisdom of God might be made known to the rulers and to the authorities in the heavenly places**
UST God … as he reveals it … he also reveals to the spiritual authorities at the highest levels how profoundly wise he is

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God may make his great wisdom known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to the rulers and to the authorities**
UST to the spiritual authorities

The words **rulers** and **authorities** share similar meanings. Paul uses them together to emphasize that every spiritual being will know God's wisdom. If your language does not have two words for this, you can use one. Alternate translation: [ruling authorities]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **in the heavenly places**
UST at the highest levels

The phrase **heavenly places** refers to the place where God is. See how this is translated in Ephesians 1:3. Alternate translation: [in the supernatural world]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the multifaceted wisdom of God**
UST God … how profoundly wise he is

Paul talks of God's **wisdom** as though it were an object with many surfaces. Alternate translation: [the complex wisdom of God] or [how extremely wise God is]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	as he reveals it … he also reveals
rulers	to the spiritual authorities
authorities	authorities
heavenly	the highest levels
church	those who believe
wisdom	wise
God	God

Ephesians 3:11

ULT	UST
according to the eternal purpose that he accomplished in Christ Jesus our Lord,	*This is the plan that God has always had, and it is what he accomplished through the work of the Messiah Jesus, our Lord.*

ULT **according to the eternal purpose**
UST This is the plan that God has always had

Alternate translation: [in keeping with the eternal plan] or [consistent with the eternal plan]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
in Christ	through the work of the Messiah Jesus
Lord	Lord

Ephesians 3:12

ULT	UST
in whom we have boldness and access with confidence through faith in him.	*So now, because of what Jesus has done, we can come to God freely and confidently because, when we trust in Jesus, he joins us to himself.*

ULT **boldness and access**
UST come to God freely and

In this section of the prayer, Paul praises God in his sufferings and prays for these Ephesian believers. The two words **boldness** and **access** work together to express one idea. Alternate translation: [bold access] or [boldness to enter]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **access with confidence**
UST come to God … confidently

It may be helpful to state explicitly that this **access** is into God's presence. Alternate translation: [access into God's presence with confidence] or [freedom to enter into God's presence with confidence]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **confidence**
UST confidently

Alternate translation: [certainty] or [assurance]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
faith	when we trust … he joins us to himself

Ephesians 3:13

ULT	UST
Therefore, I ask you not to be discouraged by my sufferings for you, which is your glory.	*So please do not be discouraged by the things that I am suffering here in prison on your behalf, because they produce a glorious result for you.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST So

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the believers have access to Christ with confidence. The result is that the believers will not be discouraged. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **for you, which is your glory**
UST on your behalf, because they produce a glorious result for you

Here, **your glory** is a metonym for the salvation and eternal life that the Ephesians will have because of Paul's work of telling them about Christ, which resulted in his suffering in prison. You can state this as a new sentence. Alternate translation: [for you. They bring you a wonderful benefit] or [for you. They result in your salvation]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sufferings	the things that … am suffering here in prison
glory	glorious

Ephesians 3:14

ULT	UST
For this reason I bend my knees to the Father,	*Because God has done all this for you, I kneel and pray to God our Father.*

ULT **For this reason**
UST Because God has done all this for you

The connecting phrase **For this reason** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Paul's sufferings have caused glory for the believers. The result is that Paul prays to the Father. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **For this reason**
UST Because God has done all this for you

You may need to make explicit what the reason is. Alternate translation: [Because God has done all this for you]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **I bend my knees to the Father**
UST I kneel and pray to God our Father

Bent **knees** are a picture of the whole person in an attitude of prayer. Alternate translation: [I bow down in prayer to the Father] or [I humbly pray to the Father]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bend	kneel
Father	Father

Ephesians 3:15

ULT	UST
from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named,	*He is the original father, who gave the pattern for every family in heaven and on the earth to follow.*

ULT **from whom every family in heaven and on earth is named**

UST He is the original father, who gave the pattern for every family in heaven and on the earth to follow

The act of naming here probably also represents the act of creating. Alternate translation: [who created and named every family in heaven and on earth]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
family	family
heaven	heaven
earth	earth

Ephesians 3:16

ULT	UST
so that he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power through his Spirit in the inner man,	*I pray that God will give you his Spirit to strengthen your spirit in proportion to how abundantly great he is.*

ULT **so that**
UST I pray that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Paul's prayer is that the Ephesian believers would be strengthened by God in their faith and love.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with power**
UST God will give you … to strengthen … in proportion to how abundantly great he is

Alternate translation: [God, because he is so great and powerful, would allow you to become strong with his power]

ULT **he would grant**
UST God will give

Alternate translation: [he would give]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
glory	great
Spirit	Spirit

Ephesians 3:17

ULT	UST
that Christ may live in your hearts through faith, being rooted and grounded in love,	*I pray that the Messiah may stay as close to you as your own hearts because you trust in him, and that everything that you do and say will be a result of God's love for you and your love for him and others*

Paul continues the prayer he began in Ephesians 3:14.

ULT **that Christ may live in your hearts through faith, being rooted and grounded in love**
UST I pray that the Messiah may stay as close to you as your own hearts because you trust in him, and that everything that you do and say will be a result of God's love for you and your love for him and others

With the phrase, **that Christ may live** Paul continues the prayer he began in Ephesians 3:14. This is the second item for which Paul prays that God will grant the Ephesians "according to the riches of his glory." The first is that they would be strengthened (Ephesians 3:16).
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **that Christ may live in your hearts through faith**
UST I pray that the Messiah may stay as close to you as your own hearts because you trust in him

Here, **hearts** represent a person's inner being, and **through** expresses the means by which Christ lives within the believer. Christ lives in the hearts of believers because God graciously allows them to have faith. Alternate translation: [that Christ may live within you because you trust in him]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **being rooted and grounded in love**
UST and that everything that you do and say will be a result of God's love for you and your love for him and others

Paul speaks of their faith as if it were a tree that has deep roots or a house built on a solid foundation. Alternate translation: [you will be like a firmly rooted tree and a building built on stone]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Christ	Messiah
faith	you trust in him
love	love
grounded	and that everything that you do and say will be

Ephesians 3:18

ULT	UST
so that you may be fully able to comprehend, along with all the saints, what is the width and length and height and depth,	*so that you may be fully able to understand, along with all of God's people, how very much the Messiah loves us.*

ULT **so that**
UST so that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Christ would live in their hearts. The result is that the Ephesian believers would fully know the love of God and be filled with God's fullness. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **to comprehend**
UST to understand

With the introductory phrase, Paul moves to the third item, **to comprehend**, for which he bends his knees and prays; the first is that God will grant that they be strengthened (Ephesians 3:16) and the second is that Christ may live in their hearts through faith (Ephesians 3:17).

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **all the saints**
UST all of God's people

Alternate translation: [all the believers in Christ]

ULT **the width and length and height and depth**
UST very much the Messiah loves us

In this metaphor Paul pictures something that is not physical or measurable as something that is physical but stretches out in all directions and, thus, is very large. This could refer to: (1) the intensity of Christ's love for us. Alternate translation: [how very much Christ loves us]; or (2) the greatness of God's wisdom. Alternate translation: [how very wise God is]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the width and length and height and depth**
UST very much the Messiah loves us

It may be necessary to state explicitly what these words refer to. If so, you could combine this with the phrase from the next verse. Alternate translation: [the width and length and height and depth of, and truly know the love of Christ] or [the width and length and height and depth of the love of Christ, and truly know it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
saints	God's people

Ephesians 3:19

ULT	UST
and to know the love of Christ surpassing knowledge, so that you may be filled with all the fullness of God.	*I pray that you will come to know how much the Messiah loves us, even though he loves us so much that we cannot understand it. I pray that God will give you a full measure of everything that he is.*

ULT **and to know the love of Christ**

UST I pray that you will come to know how much the Messiah loves us, even though he loves us so much that we cannot understand it

With the conjunction **and**, Paul continues the idea from the previous verse. They both refer to knowing the greatness of the love of Christ. Alternate translation: [that you can know how great Christ's love for us is]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **so that you may be filled with all the fullness of God**

UST I pray that God will give you a full measure of everything that he is

This is the fourth item for which Paul bends his knees and prays (Ephesians 3:14). The first is that they would "be strengthened" (Ephesians 3:16), the second is that "Christ would live in their hearts through faith" (Ephesians 3:17), and the third is that they "could comprehend Christ's love" (Ephesians 3:18).

ULT **so that you may be filled with all the fullness of God**

UST I pray that God will give you a full measure of everything that he is

In this metaphor Paul pictures the Ephesian believers as containers into which **God** can pour himself. Alternate translation: [so God can give you everything that he has to give you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **so that you may be filled**

UST I pray that … will give you a full measure of

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [so that God can fill you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with all the fullness of God**

UST God will give you a full measure of everything that he is

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **fullness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [with everything that God is full of]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **so that**
> UST I pray that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the Ephesian believers would know the love of Christ. The result is that they would be filled with the fulness of God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
knowledge	even though he loves us so much that we cannot understand it
love	loves
Christ	Messiah
God	God

Ephesians 3:20

ULT	UST
And to the one being able to do exceedingly abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that is working in us,	*Praise God, who is able to do much more than anything that we ask him to do, or even that we think that he can do, because of how powerfully he works within us!*

The words “we” and “us” in this book continue to include Paul and all believers.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

ULT **And to the one**
UST Praise God

Paul concludes his prayer by asking God to bless the Ephesian believers. You could express this as either a blessing or a prayer, in whichever way is more natural in your language.
Alternate translation: [Now to God, the one]
Support Reference: Blessings

ULT **to do exceedingly abundantly above all that we ask or think**
UST to do much more than anything that we ask him to do, or even that we think that he can do

Alternate translation: [to do much more than all that we ask or think] or [to do things that are much greater than anything that we ask him for or think about]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
think	think

Ephesians 3:21

ULT	UST
to him be the glory in the church and in Christ Jesus to all generations forever and ever. Amen.	*May all believers praise him for how great he is and for the awesome work that he has done through the Messiah Jesus! May they praise him throughout all generations forever! May it be so.*

ULT **to him {be} the glory in the church**

UST May all believers praise him for how great he is … for the awesome work that he has done … May they praise him

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **glory**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [may God's people glorify him] or [may God's people praise him for how great he is]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
glory	May … praise … for how great he is … for the awesome work that he has done … May they praise
church	all believers
Christ	Messiah
Jesus	Jesus
in Christ	through the Messiah Jesus
generations	generations
Amen	May it be so

Ephesians 4

Ephesians 4 Introduction

Ephesians 4 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verse 8, which is quoted from the Old Testament.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Spiritual gifts

Spiritual gifts are specific supernatural abilities that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians after they come to believe in Jesus. These spiritual gifts were foundational to developing the church. Paul lists here only some of the spiritual gifts. (See: faith)

Unity

Paul considers it very important that the church is united. This is a major theme of this chapter.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Old man and new man

The term “old man” probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The “new man” is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ.

Ephesians 4:1

ULT	UST
Therefore I, the prisoner for the Lord, urge you to walk worthily of the calling by which you were called,	*Because of all this, as someone who is in prison because I serve the Lord Jesus, I appeal to you to live in a way that honors Jesus, who called you to live for him.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST Because of all this

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that God will be glorified in the church for all generations. The result is that believers should walk in a way that is worthy of the Lord. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the prisoner for the Lord**
UST as someone who is in prison because … serve the Lord Jesus

Alternate translation: [someone who is in prison because he serves the Lord]

ULT **to walk worthily of the calling**
UST to live in a way that honors Jesus … to live for him

The phrase **to walk** is a common way to express the idea of living one's life. Because of what Paul has been writing to the Ephesians, he now tells them how they should live their lives as believers, reemphasizing that believers are to agree with each other.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of the calling by which you were called**
UST who called you to live for him

Here, **the calling** refers to the fact that God chose them to be his people. Alternate translation: [because God chose you to be his people]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
urge	I appeal to
Lord	Lord
for the Lord	because … serve the Lord Jesus
calling	to live for him
called	called

Ephesians 4:2

ULT	UST
with all humility and gentleness, with patience, putting up with one another in love,	*Always be humble and gentle. Be patient with each other, enduring the bothersome things that others do because you love each other.*

ULT **with all humility and gentleness**
UST Always be humble and gentle

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the words **humility**, **gentleness**, and **patience**, you could express the same ideas with verbal forms. Alternate translation: [to learn to be humble, gentle, and patient]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
humility	humble
patience	patient
putting up with	enduring the bothersome things that others do
love	love

Ephesians 4:3

ULT	UST
doing your best to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace.	*Since God's Spirit has united you, do everything that you can to remain united with one another. Bind yourselves together by acting peacefully toward each other.*

> ULT **to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace**
> UST Since God's Spirit has united you … to remain united with one another. Bind yourselves together by acting peacefully toward each other

Here Paul speaks of **peace** as if it were a **bond** that ties people together. This is a metaphor for being united with other people by living peacefully with them. Alternate translation: [to live peacefully with one another and remain united as the Spirit made possible]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace**
> UST Since God's Spirit has united you … to remain united with one another. Bind yourselves together by acting peacefully toward each other

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the words **unity** and **peace**, you could express the same ideas with verbal forms. Alternate translation: [to live peacefully with one another and remain united as the Spirit made possible]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Spirit
bond	Bind
peace	by acting peacefully toward each other

Ephesians 4:4

ULT	UST
There is one body and one Spirit, just as also you were called in one hope of your calling,	*God only has one family of believers and one Holy Spirit, just as he also called all of you to receive the one and only thing that people can hope for, that belongs to you whom God has called.*

ULT **There is one body**
UST God only has one family of believers

The church is often referred to as the **body** of Christ.

ULT **one Spirit**
UST one Holy Spirit

Alternate translation: [only one Holy Spirit]

ULT **you were called in one hope of your calling**
UST he … called all of you to receive the one and only thing that people can hope for, that belongs to you whom God has called

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God called you to have one confident hope in your calling] or [there is one thing that God also chose you to be confident in and expect him to do]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit	Holy Spirit
called	called
hope	hope
calling	called

Ephesians 4:6

ULT	UST
one God and Father of all, the one over all and through all and in all.	*There is one God, who is the Father of all of us, whether Jew or non-Jew. He rules over all of us, works through all of us, and is in all of us.*

ULT Father of all … over all … through all … in all

UST who is the Father of all of us, whether Jew or non-Jew … rules over all of us, works through all of us … is in all of us

Alternate translation: [Father of every person … over every thing … through all things … in all things]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Father	Father

Ephesians 4:7

ULT	UST
And to each one of us this grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ.	*To each one of us God has given spiritual gifts in just the way that the Messiah has decided that we should have them.*

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that the poetic material which follows is from a song that King David wrote. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **to each one of us this grace has been given**
> UST To each one of us God has given spiritual gifts

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [God has given grace to each one of us] or [God gave a gift to each believer]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **to each one of us this grace has been given**
> UST To each one of us God has given spiritual gifts

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **grace**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [God has given a gift to each believer]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grace	spiritual gifts
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 4:8

ULT	UST
Therefore it says: "Having ascended to the heights, he led captives into captivity, and he gave gifts to men."	*That is why the scripture says, As he went up to the high place, he brought with him many people whom he had captured, and gave gifts to his people.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST That is why

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that every believer has been given a spiritual gift. The result is that the Scripture says Jesus gave gifts to men. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Having ascended to the heights**
UST As he went up to the high place

Alternate translation: [When Christ went up into heaven]

Ephesians 4:9

ULT	UST
And this “He ascended,” what is it except that he also descended into the lower regions of the earth?	*The words “he went up” certainly make us know that the Messiah had also previously gone down to the lower parts of the earth.*

ULT He ascended
UST he went up

Alternate translation: [Christ went up]

ULT he also descended
UST the Messiah had also previously gone down

Alternate translation: [Christ also came down]

ULT into the lower regions of the earth
UST to the lower parts of the earth

This could refer to: (1) the **lower regions** as a part of the **earth**. (2) **the lower regions** as another way of referring to the **earth** itself. Alternate translation: [into the lower regions, the earth]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth

Ephesians 4:10

ULT	UST
The one having descended is also himself the one having ascended far above all the heavens, so that he might fill all things.	*The Messiah, who came down to earth from heaven, is also the one who returned upward to the most exalted position in heaven in order that he might fill the universe.*

ULT **so that he might fill all things**
UST in order that he might fill the universe

Alternate translation: [so that he might be working powerfully everywhere]

ULT **he might fill**
UST he might

Alternate translation: [he might complete] or [he might satisfy]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavens	heaven

Ephesians 4:11

ULT	UST
And he himself gave the apostles, and the prophets, and the evangelists, and the pastors and teachers,	*As gifts to his people, he appointed some of them to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to seek out people to tell them the good news about Jesus, and some to care for and to teach the groups of believers.*

ULT **pastors**
UST to care for

The word translated as **pastors** here is the same word that is translated as “shepherds” elsewhere in the ULT. It is the plural form of the word used by Jesus to refer to himself in John 10:10, where he says that he is the “good Shepherd.” The idea here is that in a similar way to how a shepherd feeds, protects, and watches over the well-being of his flock, so pastors feed (with spiritual food) and watch over and protect the spiritual well-being of those within their church. If it would help your readers, you could indicate explicitly the meaning of the word “pastors.” Alternate translation: [spiritual shepherds] or [shepherding Christian leaders]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
apostles	apostles
prophets	prophets
evangelists	to seek out people to tell them the good news about Jesus
teachers	to teach the groups of believers

Ephesians 4:12

ULT	UST
for the equipping of the saints for the work of serving, for building up of the body of Christ,	*God appointed all of them to prepare God's people to do the work of serving others so that all the people who belong to the Messiah might become spiritually strong.*

ULT **for the equipping of the saints**
UST God appointed all of them to prepare God's people

Alternate translation: [to prepare the people whom he has set apart] or [to provide the believers with what they need]

ULT **for the work of serving**
UST to do the work of serving others

Alternate translation: [so that they can serve others]

ULT **for building up of the body of Christ**
UST so that all the people who belong to the Messiah might become spiritually strong

Paul is speaking of people who grow spiritually as if they were doing exercises to increase the strength of their physical bodies.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **building up**
UST so that … might become spiritually strong

Alternate translation: [the improvement]

ULT **of the body of Christ**
UST all the people who belong to the Messiah

Alternate translation: [all of the members of Christ's church] or [all those who are believers in Christ]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
saints	God's people
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 4:13

ULT	UST
until we all reach to the unity of the faith and the knowledge of the Son of God, to a mature man, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ,	*This work will continue until all of us together become what God wants us to be: united as we together fully trust in the Son of God and experience his working in us, and completely mature as a group of believers—as fully mature in trusting and knowing God as the Messiah himself.*

> ULT **we all reach to the unity of the faith and the knowledge of the Son of God**
> UST all of us together become what God wants us to be: united as we together fully trust in the Son of God and experience his working in us

The implication is that the believers need to know Jesus as the **Son of God** if they are to be united in **faith** and become mature as believers. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. [we all join together in our belief and relationship with Jesus the Christ]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **we all reach to the unity of the faith**
> UST all of us together become what God wants us to be: united as we together fully trust in

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **unity**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [we all become equally strong in faith] or [we all become united together in faith]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **we all reach to the unity of the faith**
> UST all of us together become what God wants us to be: united as we together fully trust in

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faith**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [become united together as believers]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **the knowledge of the Son of God**
> UST the Son of God … experience his working in us

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **knowledge**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [all know well the Son of God]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **of the Son of God**
> UST the Son of God

Son of God is an important title for Jesus.

Support Reference: Translating Son and Father

ULT **to a mature man**
UST and completely mature as a group of believers

Alternate translation: [to a mature believer]

ULT **mature**
UST and completely mature as a group of believers

Alternate translation: [fully developed] or [grown up] or [complete]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
faith	as we … fully trust in
knowledge	experience his working in us
Son of God	Son of God
mature	and completely mature as a group of believers
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 4:14

ULT	UST
so that we may no longer be children tossed back and forth by the waves and carried away by every wind of teaching through the trickery of men in cleverness for deceitful scheming.	*Then we will no longer be spiritually immature, as little children are immature. We will no longer follow every new teaching, always changing what we believe like a boat that goes one way and then the other as the wind and waves change direction. We will not allow clever people who teach what is false to deceive us with their lies.*

ULT **so that**
UST Then

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of gifted people in the church is to bring all the believers to spiritual maturity.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **we may no longer be children**
UST we will no longer be spiritually immature, as little children are immature. We will no longer … We will not allow

Paul refers to believers who have not grown spiritually as if they were **children** who have had very little experience in life. Alternate translation: [we may no longer be like children]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **tossed back and forth by the waves and carried away by every wind of teaching**
UST follow every new teaching, always changing what we believe like a boat that goes one way and then the other as the wind and waves change direction

Paul speaks of a believer who has not become mature and follows various wrong teachings as if that believer were a boat and the teachings were the **wind** and **waves** that move the boat in different directions on the water.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **through the trickery of men in cleverness for deceitful scheming**
UST clever people who teach what is false to deceive us with their lies

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the words **trickery**, **cleverness**, and **scheming**, you could express the same ideas with verbal forms. Alternate translation: [by crafty people who trick believers with clever lies]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
teaching	teaching
deceitful	lies

Ephesians 4:15

ULT	UST
Instead, speaking truth in love, let us grow up in all things into him who is the head, even Christ,	*Rather than that, as we lovingly speak to each other what is true, let us become more and more like the Messiah in every way as he directs us, just like a person's head directs the person's body.*

ULT **Instead**
UST Rather than that

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Following every changing teaching is in contrast to becoming mature in Christ and building up his body. Use a word in your language that indicates contrast.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **speaking truth**
UST as we … speak to each other what is true

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **truth**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [speaking truthfully]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **in love**
UST lovingly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **love**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [as the members love one another]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **into him who is the head**
UST like the Messiah … as … directs us, just like a person's head directs the person's body

Paul uses a metaphor of the human body to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the **head** of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow in a healthy way.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
love	lovingly
Christ	he

Ephesians 4:16

ULT	UST
from whom the whole body, being joined and held together by every supporting ligament, according to the working in measure of each individual part, causes the growth of the body for building up itself in love.	*He is the one who joins us all together and keeps us connected to each other. He teaches us how to support each other and to work in a coordinated way as he gives the ability that is appropriate to each one of us, just as a person's head does that for the parts of his body. In this way, as we love each other, we will grow together and make each other stronger.*

ULT **from whom the whole body … causes the growth of the body**
UST He is the one who … us all … his body … we will grow together and make

Paul continues the metaphor of the believers as a human **body** with Christ as the head to describe how Christ causes believers to work together in harmony as the head of a body causes the body parts to work together to grow in a healthy way.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for building up itself in love**
UST as we love each other … each other stronger

The word **for** indicates a purpose clause. The purpose of all of the believers working together in harmony, as the members of a human body do, is so that all believers will grow in our ability to love each other and to love God. Use a word in your language that marks this as a purpose clause.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **in love**
UST as we love

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **love**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [as the members love one another] or [to be able to love each other more]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **by every supporting ligament**
UST how to support each other and to work in a coordinated way

Paul continues the metaphor comparing the believers to a human body. A **ligament** is a strong band that connects bones or holds organs in place in the body. Just as the body is held together by strong ligaments, so the believers are held together by love that grows stronger as the body parts grow and work together.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
love	love

Ephesians 4:17

ULT	UST
Therefore, I say this and strongly urge you in the Lord, to walk no longer as the Gentiles also walk, in futility of their minds.	*For that reason, and with the authority of the Lord Jesus, I tell you this: from now on you must not live in the same way as the other non-Jews live. The way that they live comes from an empty way of thinking.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST For that reason

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship in which Paul tells them what they should no longer do now that they, as believers, are sealed by the Holy Spirit of God. The reason is that Christ wants every believer to become spiritually mature and to serve the other believers. The result is that the Ephesian believers should no longer act as the Gentiles act. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Therefore, I say this and strongly urge**
UST For that reason, and with the authority of … I tell you this

Alternate translation: [Because of what I have just said, I will now say something more in order to strongly encourage]

ULT **in the Lord**
UST with the authority of the Lord Jesus

This could be: (1) referring to the authority of the Lord. (2) stating that we all belong to the Lord.

ULT **you … to walk no longer as the Gentiles also walk, in futility of their minds**
UST from now on you must not live in the same way as the other non-Jews live. The way that they live comes from an empty way of thinking

Paul commonly uses this metaphor that compares walking to living one's life. Alternate translation: [you … to stop living like the Gentiles with their worthless thoughts]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
in the Lord	with the authority of the Lord Jesus
Gentiles	non-Jews
futility	comes from an empty
minds	way of thinking

Ephesians 4:18

ULT	UST
They have been darkened in their understanding, being alienated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them, because of the hardness of their hearts.	*They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong because they try to live completely separated from God. They do this because they do not know what they are missing and because they stubbornly refuse to obey God.*

ULT **They have been darkened in their understanding**
UST They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong

This metaphor compares wrong thinking with darkness. Alternate translation: [they no longer think or reason clearly] or [they are not able to understand]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **They have been darkened in their understanding**
UST They are unable to think clearly about what is right or wrong

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [Their way of thinking has become dark] or [They no longer think or reason clearly] or [They are not able to understand]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **alienated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them**
UST because they try to live completely separated from God. They do this because they do not know what they are missing

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [because they do not know God, they cannot live the way that God wants his people to live] or [they have cut themselves off from the life of God by their ignorance]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **alienated**
UST completely separated from

Alternate translation: [cut off] or [separated]

ULT **ignorance**
UST they do not know what they are missing

Alternate translation: [lack of knowledge] or [lack of information]

ULT **because of the hardness of their hearts**
UST and because they stubbornly refuse to obey God

The phrase **hardness of their hearts** is a metaphor that means “stubbornness.” Alternate translation: [because they are stubborn] or [because they refuse to listen to God]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **because of**
UST They do this because

The connecting word **because** introduces a reason-result relationship. The first reason is that they are ignorant of him. The result is that the Gentiles are separated from God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **because of**
UST and because

Again, the connecting word **because** introduces a reason-result relationship. The second reason is that their hearts are hardened. The result is that Gentiles are separated from walking with God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
understanding	think
God	God
hardness	stubbornly refuse to obey God

Ephesians 4:19

ULT	UST
They, being dead to all feeling, handed themselves over to sensuality for the practice of every kind of impurity with greediness.	*They have become unable to sense if something is good or bad, and so they have devoted themselves to doing whatever shameful things their bodies desire. They commit all kinds of immoral acts and want to do them more and more.*

ULT **handed themselves over to sensuality**

UST and so they have devoted themselves to doing whatever shameful things their bodies desire

Paul speaks of these people as if they were objects that they themselves were giving to other people, and he speaks of the way that they want to satisfy their physical desires as if the desires were the person to whom they give themselves. Alternate translation: [have given in to every physical desire] or [only want to satisfy their physical desires]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
greediness	and want to do them more and more

Ephesians 4:20

ULT	UST
But you did not thus learn about Christ,	*But that is not how you learned to live when you learned about the Messiah,*

ULT **But you did not thus learn about Christ**
UST But that is not how you learned to live when you learned about the Messiah

The word **thus** refers to the way that the Gentiles live, as described in Ephesians 4:17–19. Paul uses **thus** to emphasize strongly that what the believers learned from Christ was the opposite of what he just described. Alternate translation: [But what you learned about the ways of Christ was not like that] or [But what you learned about the ways of Christ was very different]
Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **But**
UST But

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. The sinful way the Gentiles live is in contrast to the way that Paul taught the Ephesians to live according to the truth of Jesus. Use a connecting word in your language that marks a contrast here.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 4:21

ULT	UST
if indeed you have heard about him and were taught in him, as the truth is in Jesus.	*to the extent that you have heard and understood the message about Jesus and have learned from him, since his way is the true way to live.*

ULT **if indeed you have heard about him and were taught in him**
UST to the extent that you have heard and understood the message about Jesus and have learned from him

Paul knows that the people to whom he is writing have **heard** and been **taught** these things. He is using irony as a form of rebuke—if they are doing things contrary to the way of Christ, they know better than that and need to stop.
Support Reference: Irony

ULT **were taught in him**
UST have learned from him

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. This could mean: (1) they received instruction in his ways. (2) Jesus' people have taught them.
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **as the truth is in Jesus**
UST since his way is the true way to live

Alternate translation: [as Jesus teaches us the true way to live] or [as everything about Jesus is true]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jesus	his way
in Jesus	his way

Ephesians 4:22

ULT	UST
You are to put aside what belongs to your former manner of life, the old man being corrupted according to its deceitful desires,	*Your teachers taught you to stop living the way that you used to live. Because you desired to do evil things, you deceived yourselves into thinking that those things were good. Living like that was destroying you spiritually.*

ULT **You are to put aside {what} belongs to your former manner of life**
UST Your teachers taught you to stop living the way that you used to live

Paul is speaking of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. Alternate translation: [You must stop living according to your former manner of life]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **You are to put aside {what} belongs to your former manner of life, the old man**
UST Your teachers taught you to stop living the way that you used to live … Living like that

Paul is speaking of a way of living as if it were a person. Alternate translation: [You must stop doing the things that your former self did] or [Stop doing the things that you used to do]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the old man**
UST Living like that

The **old man** refers to the "old nature" or "former self," the way that the person was before the person became a believer in Christ.
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **being corrupted according to {its} deceitful desires**
UST Because you desired to do evil things, you deceived yourselves into thinking that those things were good … was destroying you spiritually

Paul is continuing to speak of a sinful way of living as if it were a person who does evil things. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when you fooled yourself into thinking that it was good to do whatever evil thing that you wanted to do]
Support Reference: Personification

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
corrupted	was destroying you spiritually
desires	desired
deceitful	deceived

Ephesians 4:23

ULT	UST
and to be renewed in the spirit of your minds,	*So you must let God give you a new spirit and a new way of thinking,*

ULT **to be renewed in the spirit of your minds**

UST you must let God give you a new spirit and a new way of thinking

This may be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: [to allow God to change your attitudes and thoughts] or [to allow God to give you new attitudes and thoughts]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
spirit	spirit
minds	and a … way of thinking

Ephesians 4:24

ULT	UST
and to put on the new man that is according to God—having been created in righteousness and holiness of the truth.	*and you must start living like the new person that God created you in his own image to be. He created you to live in the right way with each other and with himself, in the true way of Jesus.*

ULT **in righteousness and holiness of the truth**

UST to live in the right way with each other and with himself, in the true way of Jesus

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the words **righteousness**, **holiness**, and **truth**, you could express the same ideas with verbal forms. Alternate translation: [truly righteous and holy]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to put on the new man**

UST you must start living like the new person

Paul continues to speak of a way of living as if it were a person, and also as if it were clothing, so that one could **put on** the **new** person like a robe. Alternate translation: [be the new person] or [start living in the new way]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
created	created
righteousness	the right way with each other
holiness	with himself

Ephesians 4:25

ULT	UST
Therefore, putting aside the lying, let each of you speak truth with his neighbor, because we are members of one another.	*So stop lying to one another. Speak truthfully to each other because we belong to each other as members of God's family.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST So

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that God has created the believers as new, holy people. The result is that they would stop acting immorally like they used to live. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **putting aside the lying**
UST stop lying

Paul speaks of telling lies as if they were objects that the believers could set aside. Alternate translation: [no longer telling lies] or [instead of telling lies]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **let each of you speak truth**
UST to one another. Speak truthfully to each other

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **truth**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [each of you should speak truthfully]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **because**
UST because

The connecting word **because** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that believers are members of the same body of Christ. The result is that believers should speak the truth to each other. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **we are members of one another**
UST we belong to each other as members of God's family

Paul speaks of the close union of believers with each other as if they were each part of one single body. Alternate translation: [we belong to one another] or [we are all members of God's family]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
neighbor	to one another … to each other
members	members

Ephesians 4:26

ULT	UST
Be angry and do not sin. Do not let the sun go down on your indignation,	*Be angry about sinful behavior, but do not sin because you are angry. Before the end of each day, take care of whatever has made you angry*

ULT **Be angry and do not sin**
UST Be angry about sinful behavior, but do not sin because you are angry

Alternate translation: [You may get angry, but do not sin] or [If you become angry, do not sin]

ULT **Do not let the sun go down on your indignation**
UST Before the end of each day, take care of whatever has made you angry

The **sun** going **down** represents nightfall or the end of the day. Alternate translation: [You must stop being angry before night comes] or [Let go of your anger before the day ends]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sin	sin

Ephesians 4:27

ULT	UST
nor give an opportunity to the devil.	*so that you will not allow the devil to do evil things among you.*

ULT **nor give an opportunity to the devil**
UST so that you will not allow the devil to do evil things among you

Alternate translation: [and do not give the devil an opportunity to lead you into sin]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
devil	devil

Ephesians 4:28

ULT	UST
The thief must steal no longer. But rather, he must labor, working good with his hands, so that he may have something to share with the ones having need.	*Those who have been stealing must not steal anymore. Instead, they must work hard, doing good work by their own efforts so that they may have something to give to those who are needy.*

ULT **But rather**
UST Instead

The connecting phrase **But rather** introduces a contrast relationship. The way a former thief should work hard to have something to share with others is in contrast to the way he formerly stole for himself.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **so that**
UST so that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of working hard with ones own hands is to be able to meet the needs of others.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
labor	work
good	good

Ephesians 4:29

ULT	UST
Do not let any corrupt talk come out from your mouth, but whatever is good for building up of the one in need, so that it might give grace to the hearers,	*Do not say harmful things. Instead, say good things that will encourage people when they need help so that God can work through your words to benefit those who hear.*

ULT **corrupt talk**
UST harmful things

The phrase **corrupt talk** refers to speech that is cruel or rude. If your readers would not be familiar with this term, you could use the more familiar term in your area, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [foul language] or [unwholesome words] or [abusive speech]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **but**
UST Instead

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Speaking what is corrupt is in contrast to speaking good things that will build up others.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **for building up**
UST that will encourage people

Alternate translation: [for encouraging] or [for strengthening]

ULT **so that**
UST so that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of speaking things that build up others is to give grace to those who hear the words.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **of the {one in} need, so that it might give grace to the hearers**
UST when they need help so that God can work through your words to benefit those who hear

Alternate translation: [the needy. In this way you will help those who hear you]

ULT **so that it might give grace to the hearers**
UST so that God can work through your words to benefit those who hear

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **grace**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [so that those who hear you may be spiritually encouraged]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
corrupt	harmful
good	good
grace	God can work through your words to benefit

Ephesians 4:30

ULT	UST
and do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption.	*God has marked you as his own by giving you the Holy Spirit, who will be with you until the day that the Messiah will rescue you from this world. So do not make the Holy Spirit of God sad by how you live.*

ULT **do not grieve**
UST do not make … sad by how you live

Alternate translation: [do not distress] or [do not upset]

ULT **by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption**
UST God has marked you as his own by giving you the Holy Spirit, who will be with you until the day that the Messiah will rescue you from this world

The Holy Spirit assures believers that God will redeem them. Paul speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were a mark that God puts on believers to show that he owns them. Alternate translation: [for he is the seal that assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption] or [for he is the one who assures you that God will redeem you on the day of redemption]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption**
UST God has marked you as his own by giving you the Holy Spirit, who will be with you until the day that the Messiah will rescue you from this world

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [for he has sealed you for the day of redemption]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Spirit of God	Spirit of God
sealed	God has marked you as his own
day	day
redemption	that the Messiah will rescue you from this world

Ephesians 4:31

ULT	UST
Let all bitterness, and rage, and anger, and quarreling, and insults be removed from yourselves, along with all malice.	*Do your best to completely stop behaving in these ways: Do not be resentful or furious toward others or even become angry with others. Do not shout abusively at others or slander others. Never act maliciously in any way.*

ULT **Let … be removed**
UST Do your best to … stop behaving in these ways

Paul finishes his instructions on what believers should not do and ends with what they must do. Paul speaks of attitudes and behaviors as though they were physical objects that can be removed. Alternate translation: [you must not allow … to be part of your life]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **bitterness, and rage, and anger**
UST Do not be resentful or furious toward others or even become angry with others

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the words **bitterness**, **rage**, and **anger**, you could express the same ideas as adjectives. Alternate translation: [being bitter, and intensely angry, and angry]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **malice**
UST act maliciously in any way

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **malice**, you could express the same idea as an adjective. Alternate translation: [being malicious]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
anger	even become angry with others
insults	slander others

Ephesians 4:32

ULT	UST
Instead, be kind to each other, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, just as God in Christ also forgave you.	*Rather than behave like that, be kind to one another. Act mercifully toward each other. Forgive each other in the same way that God also forgave you through what the Messiah has done for you.*

ULT **Instead**
UST Rather than behave like that

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Speaking angry and hurtful things is in contrast to speaking kind and tender things to one another.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **tenderhearted**
UST Act mercifully toward each other

Alternate translation: [gentle and compassionate towards others]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
forgiving	Forgive
God	God
Christ	Messiah
in Christ	through what the Messiah has done
forgave	forgave

Ephesians 5

Ephesians 5 Introduction

Ephesians 5 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the words of verse 14.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Inheritance of the kingdom of Christ

Some scholars believe that those who continue to practice the things listed in 5:5 will not inherit eternal life. But God can forgive all the sins listed in this verse. Immoral, impure, or greedy people can still receive eternal life if they repent and believe in Jesus. God will be the one who decides this. (See: forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned; eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever; and inherit, inheritance, heir)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Wives, submit to your husbands

Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe that men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe that God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they interpret this issue affect how they translate this passage.

Ephesians 5:1

ULT	UST
Therefore, be imitators of God, as beloved children,	*Because of what God has done for you, imitate him just as children imitate the father who loves them dearly.*

ULT Therefore, be imitators of God
UST Because of what God has done for you, imitate him … imitate the father

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **imitators**, you could express the same idea in another way. The word **imitators** is a verbal noun, and can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: [Therefore, imitate God] or [Therefore you should do what God does.]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT Therefore
UST Because of what … has done for you

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. Paul continues to tell the believers how they should and should not live as God's children. The reason (stated in Ephesians 4:32) is that God has forgiven us through Christ. The result (stated here) is that believers should imitate what God is like. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT as beloved children
UST just as children … who loves them dearly

God desires us to imitate or follow him since we are his spiritual **children**. Alternate translation: [as dearly loved children imitate their fathers] or [because you are his children and he loves you dearly]
Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
beloved	who loves them dearly

Ephesians 5:2

ULT	UST
and walk in love, as also Christ loved us and gave himself up for us, an offering and sacrifice to God for a fragrant aroma.	*Do everything in a way that shows that you love others. Be like the Messiah, who loved us so much that he willingly died for us on the cross as the offering and sacrifice to God in our place. This sacrifice pleased God very much.*

ULT **walk in love**

UST Do everything in a way that shows that you love others

To **walk** is a common way to express the idea of living one's life. Alternate translation: [live a life of love] or [always love each other]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **an offering and sacrifice to God for a fragrant aroma**

UST as the offering and sacrifice to God in our place. This sacrifice pleased God very much

This metaphor compares Christ dying on the cross for our sins with an Old Testament **sacrifice** for sin, which were roasted in a fire and gave off a pleasing smell. Alternate translation: [like a sweet-smelling offering and sacrifice to God] or [an offering and sacrifice to God that pleased God very much]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
love	love
Christ	Messiah
loved	loved
offering	offering
sacrifice	sacrifice
God	God

Ephesians 5:3

ULT	UST
But sexual immorality and every impurity or greed must not even be named among you, just as is proper for saints,	*But there should be no reason for anyone to even suggest that any of you are involved in sexual sin or any kind of immoral or obsessive sexual behavior. Such sins do not belong among God's people.*

ULT **But sexual immorality and every impurity or greed must not even be named among you**
UST But there should be no reason for anyone to even suggest that any of you are involved in sexual sin or any kind of immoral or obsessive sexual behavior

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [Do not do anything that would let anyone think that you are guilty of sexual immorality or any kind of impurity or greed]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **But**
UST But

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. The fragrant offering and sacrifice to God is in contrast to sinful acts and thoughts that are not fitting for saints. Use a connecting word that indicates a contrast in your language.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **every impurity**
UST any kind of immoral

Alternate translation: [any moral uncleanness]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sexual immorality	are involved in sexual sin
greed	obsessive sexual behavior
saints	among God's people

Ephesians 5:4

ULT	UST
and filthiness and foolish talk or crude jokes—which are not fitting—but instead, thanksgiving.	*When you speak to each other, do not tell obscene stories or say foolish things or joke about committing sins. Such things are not what people who belong to God talk about. Instead, express the things that you are thankful for.*

ULT **but instead, thanksgiving**
UST Instead, express the things that you are thankful for

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **thanksgiving**, you could express the same idea in another way. The word **thanksgiving** is a verbal noun, and can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: [instead of those things, you should thank God]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **but instead**
UST Instead

The connecting phrase **but instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Sinful acts and thoughts are in contrast to thanksgiving to God. Use a connecting word that indicates a contrast in your language.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
foolish	foolish

Ephesians 5:5

ULT	UST
Indeed, know this for certain, that every sexually immoral or unclean or greedy person —that is, an idolater—has no inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.	*It is quite true that these people will be excluded from the kingdom of the Messiah who is God: everyone who is sexually immoral or indecent, or who is obsessed with sex, which is the same as worshiping an idol.*

ULT **unclean**
UST indecent

Being **unclean** (dirty) is a metaphor for being sinful.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **has no inheritance**
UST these people will be excluded

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: [will receive nothing] or [has no part]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	is quite true
immoral	immoral
greedy person	who is obsessed with sex
idolater	idol
inheritance	these people will be excluded
Christ	Messiah
God	God
kingdom of Christ and of God	kingdom of the Messiah who is God

Ephesians 5:6

ULT	UST
Let no one deceive you with empty words, for because of these things the wrath of God is coming upon the sons of disobedience.	*Do not let anyone deceive you by telling you that God will not punish people who do these things. It is because of these very things that God will punish the people who disobey him.*

ULT **with empty words**
UST by telling you that God will not punish people who do these things

Alternate translation: [with words that have no truth in them] or [by speaking words that are not true]

ULT **for**
UST It is

The connecting word **for** introduces a reason-result relationship. The result is stated first: that the Ephesian believers should not let anyone deceive them with empty words. Then the reason is stated: that the wrath of God will judge those things. Use a phrase that connects a reason to a result, and put them in the order that is most natural in your language.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the wrath of God is coming upon**
UST that God will punish

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wrath**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [God will certainly punish]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the sons of disobedience**
UST the people who disobey him

This is an idiom that means, “people who habitually disobey” or “people who are characterized by disobedience” Alternate translation: [those who disobey God]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
deceive	deceive
wrath	that … will punish
God	God

Ephesians 5:7

ULT	UST
Therefore, do not become partners with them,	*So do not join with those people in doing these kinds of sins.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST So

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that God will judge those people in his wrath. The result is that the Ephesian believers should not become partners with evil men. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Ephesians 5:8

ULT	UST
because formerly you were darkness, but now are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light	*Remember that before you believed in the Lord Jesus, you did not know what was true, just as people who are in a dark place do not know what is around them. But now it is as though you have come out into the light, because the Lord has shown to you what is true. So live in the way that the Lord has shown to you.*

ULT **because formerly you were darkness**
UST Remember that before you believed in the Lord Jesus, you did not know what was true, just as people who are in a dark place do not know what is around them

Just as one cannot see in the dark, so people who love to sin cannot see or understand the things of God. Alternate translation: [because formerly you did not understand anything about God]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **because**
UST Remember that

The connecting word **because** introduces a reason-result relationship. The result is stated first (v.7): that the Ephesian believers should not become partners with evil men. The reason is stated second (v. 8): that the Ephesian believers are no longer darkness, but are now light. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result, using the order that is most natural for your language.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **but now {are} light in the Lord**
UST But now it is as though you have come out into the light, because the Lord has shown to you what is true … the Lord

Just as one can see in the **light**, so people whom God has saved understand how to please God. Alternate translation: [but now you know God and can live for him]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **but**
UST But

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. The fact that the Ephesian believers were formerly darkness is in contrast to the fact that they are now light.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **Walk as children of light**
UST So live in the way that … has shown to you

To **Walk** on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Alternate translation: [Live as people who understand what the Lord wants them to do]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **as children of light**

UST So … in the way that … has shown to you

God desires us to imitate or follow him since we are his spiritual **children**. Alternate translation: [as God's children who know the truth] or [because you are God's children and see the truth]

Support Reference: Simile

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
in the Lord	because the Lord has shown to you what is true … the Lord

Ephesians 5:9

ULT	UST
(for the fruit of the light consists in all goodness and righteousness and truth),	*Because just as people who have light will walk in the right way, as a result of knowing Jesus you can always live in a way that is good, right, and true.*

ULT **the fruit of the light consists in all goodness and righteousness and truth**
UST just as people who have light will walk in the right way, as a result of knowing Jesus you can always live in a way that is good, right, and true

Here, **fruit** is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome." Alternate translation: [the result of living in the light is good work, right living, and truthful behavior]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for**
UST Because

The connecting word **for** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that fruit of the light is goodness and righteousness and truth. The result is that the Ephesian believers should walk as children of light. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
fruit	just as people who have … will walk in the right way, as a result of knowing
goodness	good
righteousness	right

Ephesians 5:11

ULT	UST
And do not take part in the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather even expose them.	*So do not participate together with those who are doing the worthless deeds that they do in spiritual darkness. Instead, expose to everyone how worthless those deeds are.*

ULT **do not take part in the unfruitful works of darkness**
UST do not participate together with those who are doing the worthless deeds that they do in spiritual darkness

Paul speaks of the useless, sinful things that unbelievers do as if they are evil deeds that people do in the dark so no one will see them. Alternate translation: [do not do useless, sinful things with unbelievers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in the unfruitful works of darkness**
UST those who are doing the worthless deeds that they do in spiritual darkness

Paul is comparing evil actions to an unhealthy tree that produces nothing good. Alternate translation: [actions that do nothing good, useful, or profitable, caused by darkness]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in the unfruitful works of darkness**
UST those who are doing the worthless deeds that they do in spiritual darkness

The word **darkness** is often used to represent sin. In this instance, these works result from sinful motives. Alternate translation: [deeds that are worthless because they were done from sinful motives]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **but rather**
UST Instead

The connecting phrase **but rather** introduces contrast relationship. Participating in the works of darkness is in contrast to exposing them.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **expose them**
UST expose to everyone how worthless those deeds are

Speaking against the works of darkness is spoken of as bringing them out into the light so that people can see them. Alternate translation: [bring them out into the light] or [uncover them] or [show and tell people how wrong these actions are]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
unfruitful	worthless

Ephesians 5:12

ULT	UST
For it is shameful even to mention the things done by them in secret.	*Of course it is shameful for God's people to even talk about the evil things that those people do in secret,*

ULT **them**
UST that those people

Here, **them** refers to the "sons of disobedience" mentioned in 5:6 and also referred to as "them" in 5:7. If it is unclear who "them" refers to in either place, then use "those who disobey God" or a similar phrase.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
shameful	shameful for God's people

Ephesians 5:13

ULT	UST
But everything exposed by the light is revealed, for everything that is revealed is light.	*but it is necessary for us to expose them so that people can know and understand that these deeds are evil. This is like when we bring something into the light in order to reveal to everyone what it truly is. Then people can examine and judge that thing that light has exposed.*

ULT **But**
UST but

The connecting word **But** introduces a contrast relationship. Hiding the shameful works of darkness now is in contrast to the light exposing them later.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **everything that is revealed is light**
UST these deeds … reveal to everyone … it … Then people can examine and judge that thing that light has exposed

Paul makes this general statement in order to imply that God's Word shows people's actions to be good or bad. The Bible often speaks of God's truth as if it were **light** that could reveal the character of something. Alternate translation: [if you compare everything to what God says, you could know if it is good or bad]
Support Reference: Metaphor

Ephesians 5:14

ULT	UST
Therefore it says, "Awake, O sleeper, and arise from the dead, and Christ will shine on you."	*Before you knew God you were like someone asleep or dead in a dark place. This is what believers are talking about when they say, "You who are asleep, wake up! You who are dead, come out of the darkness and live! The Messiah will show you what is true, just as a light that shines shows people what was in the darkness."*

ULT **Therefore**
UST This is what believers are talking about when

The connecting word **Therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that their sins will be revealed by the light. The result is that sinners should allow Christ to shine on them. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. It is unknown if this quotation is a combination of quotations from the prophet Isaiah or a quotation from a hymn sung by the believers.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Awake, O sleeper, and arise from the dead**
UST Before you knew God you were like someone asleep or dead in a dark place … You who are asleep, wake up! You who are dead, come out of the darkness and live

This could mean: (1) Paul is addressing the believers and using death as a metaphor for the areas of spiritual weakness that they need to become aware of and reject. (2) Paul is addressing unbelievers who need to wake up from being dead spiritually, just as a person who has died must come alive again in order to respond.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **O sleeper**
UST Before you knew God you were like someone asleep … You who are asleep

This could mean: (1) Paul is addressing this comment directly to unbelievers who are not reading or hearing the letter. (2) Paul is addressing this comment directly to the believers who are reading or hearing the letter.
Support Reference: Apostrophe

ULT **from the dead**
UST or dead in a dark place … You who are dead

This expression describes all **dead** people together in the underworld. To arise from among them speaks of becoming alive again and is a metaphor for becoming alive spiritually and living for God. Alternate translation: [from among all those who have died] or [from among those who are spiritually dead]
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **will shine on you**
> UST will show you what is true, just as a light that shines shows people what was in the darkness

Here, **you** refers to the “sleeper” and is singular.
Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

> ULT **Christ will shine on you**
> UST The Messiah will show you what is true, just as a light that shines shows people what was in the darkness

Christ will enable an unbeliever to understand how evil his deeds are and how Christ will forgive him and give him new life, just as light shows what actually is there that the darkness had hidden. This also applies to anything that a believer has not yet recognized as sinful. Alternate translation: [Christ will show you what is right]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 5:15

ULT	UST
Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—not as unwise but as wise,	*So be very careful how you live. Do not behave as foolish people do. Instead, behave as wise people do.*

ULT **Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—not as unwise but as wise**
UST So be very careful how you live. Do not behave as foolish people do. Instead, behave as wise people do

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that people who are **unwise** do not guard themselves against sin. Wise people, however, can identify sin and flee from it. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Therefore, you must be careful to live as a wise person rather than a foolish person]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **therefore**
UST So

The connecting word **therefore** introduces a reason-result relationship. The reason is that Christ has shown the light on him. The result is that the sinner will walk carefully in the light. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **but**
UST Instead

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Being unwise is in contrast to being wise.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **not as unwise but as wise**
UST Do not … as foolish people … Instead … as wise people

The verb "walk" is left out. You can state this clearly. Alternate translation: [not walking as those who are unwise but walking as those who are wise]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **not as unwise but as wise**
UST Do not … as foolish people … Instead … as wise people

Paul is using the adjectives **unwise** and **wise** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these adjectives with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [not as those who act unwisely but as those who act wisely]
Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wise	wise

Ephesians 5:16

ULT	UST
redeeming the time because the days are evil.	*Do the most good that you can with the time that you have, because people are doing more and more evil things every day.*

ULT **redeeming the time**
UST Do the most good that you can with the time that you have

Using time wisely is spoken of as if it were **redeeming the time**. Alternate translation: [doing the best things you can with your time] or [using time wisely] or [putting time to its best use]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **because the days are evil**
UST because people are doing more and more evil things every day

The word **days** is a metonym for what people do during those days. Alternate translation: [because the people around you are constantly doing all kinds of evil things and the opportunities that you have to do good may become few]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **because**
UST because

The connecting word **because** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the days are evil. The result is that the believers must redeem the time. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
redeeming	Do the most good that you can with
time	time
days	day
evil	evil

Ephesians 5:17

ULT	UST
Because of this, do not be foolish, but understand what the will of the Lord is.	*So be wise, understand well what it is that the Lord Jesus wants you to do, and do it!*

ULT **Because of this**
UST So

The connecting phrase **Because of this** introduces the result of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the days are evil. The result is that the believers will not be foolish, but understand God's will. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **but**

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Being foolish is in contrast to understanding God's will.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
foolish	be wise
understand	understand
Lord	Lord
will of the Lord is	it is that the Lord Jesus wants you to do, and do it

Ephesians 5:18

ULT	UST
And do not get drunk with wine, in which is recklessness. Instead, be filled with the Spirit,	*Do not become drunk by drinking alcoholic drinks, because people cannot control themselves when they are drunk. Instead, let God's Spirit control what you do at all times.*

ULT And do not get drunk with wine
UST Do not become drunk by drinking alcoholic drinks

Paul ends his instructions on how all believers should live. Alternate translation: [You should not get drunk from drinking wine]

ULT in which is recklessness
UST because people cannot control themselves when they are drunk

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **recklessness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [which leads to reckless behavior] or [because that will ruin you]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT Instead, be filled with the Spirit
UST Instead, let God's Spirit control what you do at all times

Alternate translation: [Instead, you should be controlled by the Holy Spirit]

ULT Instead
UST Instead

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Being drunk is in contrast to being filled with the Spirit.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
drunk	drunk
wine	by drinking alcoholic drinks
Spirit	Spirit

Ephesians 5:19

ULT	UST
speaking to each other in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and singing psalms in your heart to the Lord,	*Sing to each other Psalms and songs about the Messiah and songs that God's Spirit gives you. Let this music come from deep within you as sincere praise to the Lord.*

ULT **psalms and hymns and spiritual songs**
UST Psalms and songs about the Messiah and songs that God's Spirit gives you

This could mean: (1) Paul is using these words as a merism for "all sorts of songs to praise God" (2) Paul is listing specific forms of music.
Support Reference: Merism

ULT **psalms**
UST Psalms

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that these **psalms** are probably songs from the Old Testament book of Psalms that believers sang in worship. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the lyrical poems of David and others]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **hymns**
UST songs about the Messiah

These **hymns** are songs of praise and worship that may have been written specifically for Christians to sing.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **spiritual songs**
UST songs that God's Spirit gives you

This could mean: (1) these are songs that the Holy Spirit inspires a person to sing right at that moment (2) **spiritual songs** and "hymns" form a doublet. They mean basically the same thing, and you could use one word for these instead of two.
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **in your heart**
UST come from deep within you as sincere praise

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person's thoughts or inner being. This could mean: (1) they should do this with true motives and sincerity. Alternate translation: [from deep within your being] or [sincerely]; or (2) they should do this with enthusiasm: Alternate translation: [with all of your being] or [enthusiastically]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
psalms	Psalms
spiritual	Spirit
psalms	Let this music
Lord	Lord

Ephesians 5:20

ULT	UST
giving thanks always for everything in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ to God, even the Father,	*At all times thank God the Father for everything because of what our Lord Jesus the Messiah has done for you.*

ULT **in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ**
UST because of what our Lord Jesus the Messiah has done for you

Here, **name** could refer to: (1) Jesus himself. Alternate translation: [because you belong to our Lord Jesus Christ]; or (2) the authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: [with the authority of our Lord Jesus Christ]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to God, even the Father**
UST God the Father

Alternate translation: [to God, who is our Father]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
Father	God the Father

Ephesians 5:21-22

ULT **submitting yourselves to one another**
UST Humbly submit yourselves to each other

Paul assumes that his readers will understand that he is continuing to explain what it means to "be filled with the Spirit" (Ephesians 5:18). You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Here Paul says that Christians are to submit themselves to one another. Alternate translation: [yielding to fellow believers]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **wives, to your own husbands, as to the Lord**
UST Wives should submit to their own husband's leadership as they do to the Lord Jesus … as

Paul is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You could supply these words from earlier in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [wives, submitting yourselves to your own husbands, just as you submit yourselves to the Lord]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

Ephesians 5:23

ULT	UST
For a husband is the head of the wife as Christ also is the head of the church—he himself is the savior of the body.	

ULT **For**
UST because

The connecting word **For** introduces the reason of the reason-result relationship. The reason is that the husband is head of the wife in the same way that Christ is head of the church. The result is that wives should submit to their husbands. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the head of the wife … the head of the church**
UST the leader of the wife … is the leader of the worldwide assembly of believers

The word **head** here represents the leader.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of the body**
UST all believers

The church is often referred to as the **body** of Christ.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Christ	Messiah
church	of the worldwide assembly of believers
savior	Savior

Ephesians 5:25

ULT	UST
Husbands, love your wives just as Christ also loved the church and gave himself up for her,	*Each of you husbands, love your wife as much as the Messiah loved all who would believe in him. He even gave up his own life for us on the cross*

Here the words **himself** and **he** refer to Christ. The word **her** refers to the church.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **love your wives**
UST love your wife

Here, the command to **love** implies that the husband unselfishly does what is best for the wife, unselfishly serving or giving to his wife, following the example of Christ. Alternate translation: [sacrifice yourselves for your wives]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **gave himself up**
UST He … gave up his own life … on the cross

Alternate translation: [allowed people to kill him]

ULT **for her**
UST for us

Paul speaks of the assembly of believers as though she were a woman whom Jesus will marry. Alternate translation: [for us]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
love	love
Christ	Messiah
loved	loved
church	all who would believe in him

Ephesians 5:26

ULT	UST
so that he might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of the water with the word,	*so that he might set us apart for himself. He purified us by telling us his plan to forgive us and by removing our sins as though washing them away in water.*

ULT **so that**
UST so that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Christ giving himself up to death is to sanctify the church.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **he might sanctify her, having cleansed her**
UST he might set us apart for himself. He purified us

Paul speaks of the assembly of believers as though she were a woman whom Jesus will marry. Alternate translation: [he might make us holy, having cleansed us]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **having cleansed her by the washing of the water with the word**
UST He purified us by telling us his plan to forgive us … by removing our sins as though washing them away in water

This could mean: (1) Paul is referring to God making Christ's people clean by the preaching and acceptance of God's **word** in the gospel message and through **water** baptism in Christ. (2) Paul is speaking of God making us spiritually clean from our sins by the message as if God were making our bodies clean by washing them with **water**.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
sanctify	he might set … apart for himself
the word	telling us his plan to forgive us

Ephesians 5:27

ULT	UST
so that he might present the church to himself as glorious, not having stain or wrinkle or any of those things, but so that she might be holy and blameless.	*He did this so that he could present the group of all believers to himself as a glorious group that does not have any sin or moral imperfection, but instead is holy and perfect, like a glorious bride ready to meet her groom.*

ULT **so that**
UST did this so that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Christ cleansing the church with the word is to present the church to himself as a glorious bride.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **not having stain or wrinkle**
UST that does not have any sin or moral imperfection

Paul speaks of the church as though it were a garment that is clean and in perfect condition. Alternate translation: [not having any defect]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **not having stain or wrinkle**
UST that does not have any sin or moral imperfection

Here, **stain** and **wrinkle** represent the same idea of defect in two ways to emphasize the church's purity. If your language does not have two different words, you can use one word for this. Alternate translation: [not having damage]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **but**
UST but instead

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. The church having stains and wrinkles of sin is in contrast to the church being holy and blameless.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **so that**

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Christ washing the church is to make the church holy and blameless.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **holy and blameless**
UST holy and perfect

Here, **blameless** means basically the same thing as **holy**. Paul uses the two together to emphasize the church's purity. If your language does not have two different words, you can use one word for this.
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
glorious	glorious
church	group of all believers
holy	holy
blameless	perfect

Ephesians 5:28

ULT	UST
In the same way, the husbands also ought to love their own wives as their own bodies. The one loving his own wife loves himself.	*In that same way, each man should love his own wife as much as he loves his own body. A man who loves his wife is also, by doing that, loving himself*

> ULT **as their own bodies**
> UST as much as … his own body

You can state explicitly that people love **their own bodies**. Alternate translation: [as husbands love their own bodies]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
love	love
loving	loves
loves	loving

Ephesians 5:29

ULT	UST
For no one ever hated his own body, but he nourishes and treats it with care, just as Christ also does the church,	

ULT **but he nourishes**
UST Instead, he feeds his own body

Alternate translation: [but he feeds]

ULT **but**
UST Instead

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Hating one's own body is in contrast to caring for it.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Christ	Messiah
church	all us believers in his worldwide assembly

Ephesians 5:30

ULT	UST
because we are members of his body.	

ULT **because**
UST We have become

The connecting word **because** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that the church is Christ's body. The result is that Christ cares for the church. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result. Alternate translation: [since]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **we are members of his body**
UST We have become one group of believers that belongs to him

Paul speaks of the close union of believers with Christ as if they were part of his own **body**, for which he would naturally care.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
members	one group of believers that belongs to

Ephesians 5:31

ULT	UST
“Because of this a man will leave his father and his mother and will be joined to his wife, and the two will become one flesh.”	*The scriptures say this about people who marry: “Therefore a man will leave his father and his mother and will join himself to his wife, and the two of them will become as though they were one person.”*

The quotation is from the writings of Moses in the Old Testament. The word **his** refers to a male believer who marries.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Because of this**

UST Therefore

The connecting phrase **Because of this** introduces the result of a reason-result relationship. In this case, this phrase is part of a quotation from Genesis 2:24, and so the reason is not stated here, but it is stated in Genesis 2:23 that woman was created out of man. The result is that a man will leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife. If it is confusing to not state the reason, you could include a footnote that says, “the reason for this is that woman was created out of man. See Genesis 2:23”

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Ephesians 6

Ephesians 6 Introduction

Ephesians 6 Chapter Introduction

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Slavery

Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about working to please God whether as a slave or as a master. What Paul teaches here about slavery would have been surprising. In his time, masters were not expected to treat their slaves with respect and not threaten them.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Armor of God

This extended metaphor describes how Christians can protect themselves when spiritually attacked. (See: spirit, wind, breath; and Metaphor)

Ephesians 6:1

ULT	UST
Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is righteous.	*As for you who are children, obey your parents as a way of serving the Lord Jesus because it is right for you to do that.*

ULT **in the Lord**
UST as a way of serving the Lord Jesus

Paul continues to explain how Christians, people who live **in the Lord**, are to submit themselves to each other. He gives instructions to children, fathers, workers, and masters. Alternate translation: [because you belong to the Lord] or [as followers of the Lord]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for**
UST because

The connecting word **for** introduces the reason of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that children should do what is right. The result is that children should obey their parents. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
in the Lord	as a way of serving the Lord Jesus
righteous	right for you to do

Ephesians 6:1-3

The command in verse one is plural. Then in verses two and three Paul quotes from the law of Moses. Moses was talking to the people of Israel as though they were one person, so **your** and **you** are singular there. If that does not make sense, you may need to translate them as plurals.
Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

Ephesians 6:3

ULT	UST
“so that it may be well with you and you may be long-lived on the earth.”	*“If you do that, you will prosper, and you will live a long time on the earth.”*

> ULT **so that**
> UST If you do that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of obeying your father and mother is to live well and long on the earth.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
earth	earth

Ephesians 6:4

ULT	UST
And fathers, do not provoke your children to anger. Instead, raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord.	*As for you who are fathers, do not treat your children in a way that makes them become angry. Instead, bring them up well by instructing them and by disciplining them in the manner that the Lord Jesus wants you to do.*

ULT **do not provoke your children to anger**

UST do not treat your children in a way that makes them become angry

Alternate translation: [do not make your children angry] or [do not cause your children to be angry]

ULT **Instead**

UST Instead

The connecting word **Instead** introduces a contrast relationship. Fathers provoking their children to anger is in contrast to raising their children in discipline and instruction.

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **raise them in the discipline and instruction of the Lord**

UST bring them up well by instructing them and by disciplining them in the manner that the Lord Jesus wants you to do

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the words **discipline** and **instruction**, you could express the same ideas with verbal forms. Alternate translation: [teach them to become adults by making sure that they know and do what the Lord wants them to do]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
provoke	treat … in a way that makes them become angry
instruction	by disciplining them
Lord	Lord

Ephesians 6:5

ULT	UST
Slaves, obey your masters according to the flesh with fear and trembling, in honesty of your heart, as to Christ,	*As for you who are slaves, very respectfully and sincerely obey those who are your masters here on the earth, just as you obey the Messiah.*

ULT **fear and trembling**
UST very respectfully

The phrase **fear and trembling** uses two similar ideas to emphasize the importance of honoring their masters. Alternate translation: [with deep respect]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and trembling**
UST very respectfully

Here, **trembling** is an exaggeration used to emphasize how important it is that slaves obey their masters. Alternate translation: [and deep respect] or [as though you were shaking with fear]
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **in honesty of your heart**
UST and sincerely

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person's mind or intentions. Alternate translation: [with honesty] or [with sincerity]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in honesty**
UST and sincerely

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **honesty**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [honestly] or [sincerely]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **as to Christ**
UST just as you obey the Messiah

To make the meaning of this phrase clear, you may want to include the verb here: "as you obey Christ."
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Slaves	As for you who are slaves
masters	masters
fear	very respectfully
trembling	very respectfully
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 6:6

ULT	UST
not with eye-service as men-pleasers, but as slaves of Christ, doing the will of God from the soul,	*Obey them not only when they are watching you, as people do who only care about appearing to work hard. Instead, work as though you were slaves of the Messiah, doing enthusiastically what God wants you to do.*

ULT **but**
UST Instead

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. Obeying our masters as men-pleasers is in contrast to obeying them because we are slaves of Christ.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **as slaves of Christ**
UST work as though you were slaves of the Messiah

Alternate translation: [as though your earthly master were Christ himself]

ULT **from the soul**
UST enthusiastically

Here, **soul** is a metonym for “attitudes” or “intentions.” Alternate translation: [wholeheartedly] or [enthusiastically]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
slaves	you were slaves
Christ	Messiah
God	God
will of God	what God wants you to do
soul	enthusiastically

Ephesians 6:9

ULT	UST
And masters, do the same to them. Stop using threats. You know that the Master, both theirs and yours, is in heaven, and there is no favoritism with him.	*As for you who are masters, just like your slaves should serve you well, in the same way you must treat them well. Stop threatening them. Do not forget that the one who is both their Lord and your Lord is in heaven and he judges all people equally whether their position is high or low.*

ULT **do the same to them**

UST just like your slaves should serve you well, in the same way you must treat them well

Here, **the same** refers back to "if he does something good" from (Ephesians 6:8). Alternate translation: [you also must treat your slaves well] or [just as slaves must do good to their masters, you also must do good to your slaves]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **You know that the Master, both theirs and yours, is in heaven**

UST Do not forget that the one who is both their Lord and your Lord is in heaven

Alternate translation: [You know that Christ is the Master of both slaves and their masters, and that he is in heaven]

ULT **there is no favoritism with him**

UST he judges all people equally whether their position is high or low

Alternate translation: [he judges everyone the same way]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
masters	masters
know	Do not forget
Master	Lord
heaven	heaven
favoritism	he judges all people equally whether their position is high or low

Ephesians 6:10

ULT	UST
Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the force of his strength.	*Finally, rely completely on the Lord Jesus to strengthen you spiritually because he is immeasurably strong.*

ULT **Finally, be strong in the Lord**
UST Finally, rely completely on the Lord Jesus to strengthen you spiritually

Paul is using the word translated **Finally** to introduce a new event in the story. Here Paul gives instructions to make believers strong in this battle we are in for God. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event. Alternate translation: [In conclusion]

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **the force of his strength**
UST he is immeasurably strong

These two words, **force** and **strength**, are very similar in meaning. Together, they reinforce each other. See how you translated this phrase near the end of Ephesians 1:19. Alternate translation: [his great power]

Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
in the Lord	on the Lord Jesus
force	is immeasurably strong

Ephesians 6:11

ULT	UST
Put on the whole armor of God, to enable you to stand against the scheming of the devil.	*Just as a soldier puts on all of his armor to be ready to fight his enemy, you should use every spiritual resource that God provides for you so that you may successfully resist the devil when he cleverly schemes against you.*

ULT **Put on the whole armor of God, to enable you to stand against the scheming of the devil**

UST Just as a soldier puts on all of his armor to be ready to fight his enemy, you should use every spiritual resource that God provides for you so that you may successfully resist the devil when he cleverly schemes against you

In this metaphor, Paul pictures the spiritual resources that **God** gives to all Christians as a soldier's **armor**. Alternate translation: [Just as a soldier puts on armor to protect himself from enemy attacks, use all of God's resources to stand firmly against the devil]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the scheming**

UST when he cleverly schemes against you

Alternate translation: [the tricky plans]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
armor	armor
God	God
devil	devil

Ephesians 6:12

ULT	UST
For our struggle is not against blood and flesh, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the world-controllers of this darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places.	*Remember that we are not fighting against other human beings. Instead, we are fighting against the demons who have authority to rule over the people doing evil things in this evil time, that is, against the evil spirits who live in the air.*

ULT **For**
UST Remember that

The connecting word **For** introduces the reason of this reason-result relationship. The reason is that we are in a struggle against spiritual forces of darkness. The result is that we should put on the whole armor of God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **blood and flesh**
UST other human beings

This expression refers to people, not to spirits who do not have human bodies. Alternate translation: [human beings]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **but**
UST Instead

The connecting word **but** introduces a contrast relationship. People made of flesh and blood are in contrast to spiritual forces.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **against the world-controllers**
UST to rule over the people doing evil things

Here it is implied that **the world-controllers** refers to powerful spiritual beings. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [against the powerful spiritual beings that rule over people]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **of this darkness**
UST in this evil time

Here, **darkness** is a metaphor for things that are evil. Alternate translation: [during this present evil time]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rulers	demons
authorities	authority
spiritual forces	spirits
evil	evil
heavenly	air

Ephesians 6:13

ULT	UST
Because of this, put on the whole armor of God, so that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and, having done everything, to stand.	*That is why you must use well all of the spiritual resources that God has given you, like a soldier who puts on all of his armor. If you do that, you will be able to resist the evil spirits when they attack you. You will also be ready for when they attack you again and able to continue to live well for God.*

ULT **Because of this, put on the whole armor of God**
UST That is why you must use well all of the spiritual resources that God has given you, like a soldier who puts on all of his armor

Christians should use the protective resources **God** gives them in fighting the devil in the same way that a soldier puts on **armor** to protect himself against his enemies.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Because of this**
UST That is why

The connecting phrase **Because of this** introduces the result of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that we are in a battle against evil spiritual forces. The result is that we should put on the whole armor of God. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **so that you may be able to withstand in the evil day**
UST If you do that, you will be able to resist the evil spirits when they attack you … able

The word **withstand** means to successfully resist something. Alternate translation: [so that you may be able to resist when evil attacks you]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **so that you may be able to withstand**
UST If you do that, you will be able to resist … able

It may be helpful to state explicitly what believers are to **withstand**. Alternate translation: [so that you may be able to withstand the attacks of the devil]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **so that**
UST If you do that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of putting on the whole armor of God is to be able to withstand the attacks of the spiritual forces of darkness.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
armor	armor
God	God
day	when they attack you
evil	evil

Ephesians 6:14

ULT	UST
Stand, therefore, having girded up your loins with truth and having put on the breastplate of righteousness,	*You must be ready to resist the devil and his evil spirits just as soldiers must always be ready to resist the enemy. To do that, keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you. Also, continue to act righteously. This will protect you like a soldier's armor protects his chest.*

ULT **Stand, therefore**
UST You must be ready to resist the devil and his evil spirits … To do that

The word **Stand** represents taking a position on what is right and true and successfully resisting forces that try to make the believer compromise that position. See how you translated "stand firm" in Ephesians 6:13. Alternate translation: [So resist evil]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **therefore**
UST You must be ready to resist the devil and his evil spirits … To do that

The connecting word **therefore** introduces the result of a reason-result relationship. The reason is that we believers have put on our spiritual armor. The result is that we will stand and resist the evil spiritual forces. Use a phrase in your language that connects a reason to a result.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **having girded up your loins with truth**
UST just as soldiers must always be ready to resist the enemy … keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you

In this metaphor, **truth** is compared to a soldier's belt. Truth holds everything together for a believer just as a belt holds the clothing of a soldier together. Alternate translation: [having wrapped yourself in all that is true]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **truth**
UST keep thinking about the true things that God has shown you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **truth**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [what is true]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **having put on the breastplate of righteousness**
UST continue to act righteously. This will protect you like a soldier's armor protects his chest

In this metaphor, **righteousness** is compared to a soldier's **breastplate**. Just as soldiers put on a breastplate to protect themselves from enemy attacks, believers should behave in a righteous way to protect themselves from spiritual attacks.
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **of righteousness**
> UST act righteously

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **righteousness**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [the right way to live]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
breastplate	This will protect you like a soldier's armor protects his chest
righteousness	act righteously

Ephesians 6:15

ULT	UST
and having shod your feet with readiness of the gospel of peace.	*Just like a soldier who keeps his boots on, be ready to go anywhere you are needed for the sake of the good news that tells people how to be at peace with God.*

ULT **having shod your feet with readiness of the gospel of peace**
UST Just like a soldier who keeps his boots on, be ready to go anywhere you are needed for the sake of the good news that tells people how to be at peace with God

In this metaphor, **the gospel of peace** is compared to a soldier's sandals. Just as a soldier wears sturdy footwear to give him solid footing and enable him to march long distances, the believer must have solid knowledge of the gospel of peace and be ready to go where the Lord sends him to proclaim it.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of peace**
UST that tells people how to be at peace with God

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **peace**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [that makes everything good between people and God]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gospel	good news
peace	peace

Ephesians 6:16

ULT	UST
In everything take up the shield of the faith, by which you will be able to extinguish all the flaming arrows of the evil one.	*Just as a soldier holds up a shield to stop the flaming arrows that his enemy shoots at him, you must keep trusting firmly in the Lord at all times. That will protect you from all of the things that your enemy, Satan, the evil one, will try to do to harm you spiritually.*

ULT **In everything take up the shield of the faith**
UST Just as a soldier holds up a shield … you must keep trusting firmly in the Lord at all times

In this metaphor, faith is compared to a soldier's **shield**. Just as a soldier uses a shield to protect himself from enemy attacks, the believer must use the **faith** that God gives for protection when the devil attacks.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of the faith**
UST keep trusting firmly in the Lord

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faith**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [that represents how much you trust in the Lord]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the flaming arrows of the evil one**
UST the flaming arrows that his enemy shoots at him … of the things that your enemy, Satan, the evil one, will try to do to harm you spiritually

The attacks of the devil against a believer are like **flaming arrows** shot at a soldier by an enemy.
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
shield	shield
faith	keep trusting firmly in the Lord
evil one	evil one
to extinguish	to stop

Ephesians 6:17

ULT	UST
And take the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.	*Also, as a soldier relies on a helmet to protect his head, rely on the fact that God has saved you. And just as a soldier uses a sword to defeat his enemies, use the weapon that God's Spirit gives you, which is the message that comes from God.*

ULT **take the helmet of salvation**

UST as a soldier relies on a helmet to protect his head, rely on the fact that God has saved you … uses … use

The **salvation** that God gives protects the believer's mind just as a **helmet** protects the head of a soldier.

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of salvation**

UST the fact that God has saved you

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **salvation**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [that represents the fact that God has saved you]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God**

UST just as a soldier … a sword to defeat his enemies … the weapon that God's Spirit gives you, which is the message that comes from God

In this metaphor, God's message is compared to a soldier's **sword**. Just as soldiers use a sword to fight and defeat their enemy, so a believer can use God's message in the Bible to fight against the devil.

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
salvation	saved
sword	sword
Spirit	Spirit
word of God	the message that comes from God

Ephesians 6:18

ULT	UST
With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit. And to this end, be watchful with all perseverance and requests for all the saints,	*Whenever you pray to God and request things from him, always let God's Spirit direct you in how you pray and what you pray for. To be most effective, keep watching to see what God is doing, and be persistent as you continue to pray for all of God's people.*

ULT **With every prayer and request, pray at all times in the Spirit**
UST Whenever you pray to God and request things from him, always let God's Spirit direct you in how you pray and what you pray for

Alternate translation: [Pray at all times in the Spirit as you pray and make specific requests]

ULT **to this end**
UST To be most effective

The connecting phrase **to this {end}** marks a goal or purpose relationship. The goal is what was just mentioned: to pray at all times in the Spirit. In order to do that, believers must be watchful and persevere in making requests for all the saints. Alternate translation: [for this reason] or [in order to do that]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **be watchful with all perseverance and requests for all the saints**
UST keep watching to see what God is doing, and be persistent as you continue to pray for all of God's people

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **perseverance**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [persevere in being alert, and pray for all God's holy people] or [pray with constant alertness for all the believers]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prayer	pray
request	request things from him
pray	pray
times	always
Spirit	Spirit
perseverance	and be persistent
requests	pray
saints	God's people

Ephesians 6:19

ULT	UST
and for me, so that a message might be given to me in the opening of my mouth, to make known with boldness the mystery of the gospel	*Pray for me, also, that God would tell me what I should say whenever I speak, in order that I may boldly tell others the good news about the Messiah that people did not know before.*

ULT **and for me**
UST Pray for me, also

Paul is leaving out a word that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You could supply these words from earlier in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. In closing this letter, Paul asks his readers to pray for his boldness in telling the gospel. Alternate translation: [and pray for me]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **so that a message might be given to me**
UST that God would tell me what I should say

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [that God might give me the word] or [God might give me the message]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **so that**
UST that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of the believers praying for Paul is to enable him to preach the gospel boldly.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **the opening of my mouth**
UST I speak

This is a metonym for speaking. Alternate translation: [my speaking] or [in what I say]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	in order that I may … tell others … about the Messiah
mystery	that people did not know before
gospel	good news

Ephesians 6:20

ULT	UST
(for which I am an ambassador in chains), so that in it I may speak boldly, as it is necessary for me to speak.	*It is because I have been telling people about the Messiah that I am now representing him here in prison. Pray that as I continue to tell others about the Messiah, I may speak boldly because that is how I ought to speak.*

ULT **for which I am an ambassador in chains**

UST It is because I have been telling people about the Messiah that I am now representing him here in prison

The phrase **in chains** is a metonym for being in prison. Alternate translation: [because of which I am now in prison]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **so that in it I may speak boldly, as it is necessary for me to speak**

UST Pray that as I continue to tell others about the Messiah, I may speak boldly because that is how I ought to speak

The word “pray” is understood from verse 18. Alternate translation: [pray that whenever I teach the gospel, I will speak it as boldly as I should] or [pray that I may speak the gospel as boldly as I should]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **so that**

UST Pray that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of the believers praying for Paul is to enable him to preach the gospel boldly even though he is in chains.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **in it**

UST as I continue to tell others about the Messiah

Here, **it** refers back to the “message” in verse 19 that Paul wants to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could repeat the word “message” here. Alternate translation: [in my message]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

Ephesians 6:21

ULT	UST
But so that you also may know the things concerning me, how I am doing, Tychicus, the beloved brother and faithful servant in the Lord, will make known to you everything,	*Now in order that you may know about what is happening with me and what I am doing, Tychicus will tell you everything that is happening here. He is a fellow believer whom we all love very much, and he serves the Lord Jesus faithfully.*

ULT **so that**
UST in order that

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Paul sending Tychicus to Ephesus was to tell the Ephesian believers what was happening to Paul.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **brother**
UST a fellow believer

Paul speaks of Tychicus as if he were a **brother** to all the other believers who were in God's spiritual family. Alternate translation: [fellow believer]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
known	will tell
Tychicus	Tychicus
beloved	whom we all love very much
faithful	faithfully
Lord	Lord
in the Lord	the Lord Jesus

Ephesians 6:22

ULT	UST
whom I have sent to you for this very purpose, so that you may know the things about us and your hearts may be encouraged.	*That is the reason that I am sending him to you with this letter; I want you to know how we are, and I want him to comfort and encourage you.*

ULT **your hearts may be encouraged**
UST I want him to comfort and encourage you

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for people's inner beings. Alternate translation: [he may encourage you]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **so that**
UST That

The connecting phrase **so that** introduces a goal relationship. The goal or purpose of Paul sending Tychicus to the Ephesians is to encourage their hearts and to let them know what was happening to Paul and his companions.
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	know
may be encouraged	I want him to comfort and encourage

Ephesians 6:23

ULT	UST
Peace to the brothers, and love with faith from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.	*I pray that God our Father and the Lord Jesus the Messiah may give to all of you fellow believers a peaceful spirit and enable you to love each other and to continue to trust in God.*

ULT **Peace to the brothers, and love with faith from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ**
UST I pray that God our Father and the Lord Jesus the Messiah may give to all of you fellow believers a peaceful spirit and enable you to love each other and to continue to trust in God

Paul closes his letter to the Ephesian believers with a blessing of **Peace** and **love** on all believers who love Christ. You could express this as either a blessing or a prayer, in whichever way is more natural in your language.
Support Reference: Blessings

ULT **Peace to the brothers**
UST may give to all of you fellow believers a peaceful spirit

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **Peace**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [May the brothers have a peaceful spirit]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the brothers**
UST to all of you fellow believers

Paul speaks of the other believers as if they were **brothers** to all of the other believers who were in God's spiritual family. Alternate translation: [to the fellow believers]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **love**
UST enable you to love each other

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **love**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [may you love one another]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **with faith**
UST and to continue to trust in God

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faith**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [as you trust in the Lord]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Peace	peaceful
love	love
faith	and to continue to trust in God
God the Father	Father
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah

Ephesians 6:24

ULT	UST
Grace be with all the ones loving our Lord Jesus Christ with incorruptibility.	*I pray that God will continue to act graciously among all people who steadfastly love our Lord Jesus the Messiah.*

ULT **Grace {be} with**
UST I pray that God will continue to act graciously among all people

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **Grace**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [May God act graciously to]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **with incorruptibility**
UST steadfastly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **incorruptibility**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: [in a way that no one is able to corrupt] or [so much that no one can make them stop loving him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Grace	I pray that God will continue to act graciously among
loving	love
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah

Appendix: Translation Academy

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

… from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

> Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

> Today the people in this house **have been saved** … Today God **has saved** the people in this house …

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:1 Ephesians 2:4 Ephesians 2:4 Ephesians 2:5 Ephesians 2:8 Ephesians 3:19 Ephesians 3:21 Ephesians 4:2 Ephesians 4:3 Ephesians 4:7 Ephesians 4:13 Ephesians 4:13 Ephesians 4:13 Ephesians 4:14 Ephesians 4:15 Ephesians 4:15 Ephesians 4:16 Ephesians 4:24 Ephesians 4:25 Ephesians 4:29 Ephesians 4:31 Ephesians 4:31 Ephesians 5:1 Ephesians 5:4 Ephesians 5:6 Ephesians 5:18 Ephesians 6:4 Ephesians 6:5 Ephesians 6:14 Ephesians 6:14 Ephesians 6:15 Ephesians 6:16 Ephesians 6:17 Ephesians 6:18 Ephesians 6:23 Ephesians 6:23 Ephesians 6:23 Ephesians 6:24 Ephesians 6:24

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
(3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)
>
> > **The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)
>
> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> > It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)
>
> > He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:11 Ephesians 1:11 Ephesians 1:13 Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 1:21 Ephesians 1:23 Ephesians 2:5 Ephesians 2:8 Ephesians 2:11 Ephesians 2:20 Ephesians 2:22 Ephesians 3:3 Ephesians 3:5 Ephesians 3:5 Ephesians 3:9 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 3:15 Ephesians 3:19 Ephesians 4:4 Ephesians 4:7 Ephesians 4:18 Ephesians 4:18 Ephesians 4:21 Ephesians 4:23 Ephesians 4:30 Ephesians 5:3 Ephesians 6:19

Apostrophe

Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

> Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

> Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar**, **altar**! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, … on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar**, **altar**! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, … on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)
>
> > He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar.** 'See, … they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"
>
> **Mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **you.** (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)
>
> > **As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:14

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not," such as the bolded parts of these words: "**un**happy," "**im**possible," and "use**less**." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> We did this **not** because we have **no** authority … (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)
>
> And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)
>
> Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."

- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called litotes.

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.
or:
Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “in order to be fruitful.”

> A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means “a prophet is honored.”

> I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means “I want you to be knowledgeable.”

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.
(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)
>
> > “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)
>
> > “… so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if

it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

> > Without me, you can do **nothing**.
> >
> > or:
> > Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

> ...ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)
>
> ...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

> > ...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law
> >
> > or:
> > ...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:4

Doublet

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> … like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of "Master" means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)
>
> > "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)
>
> > "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> … like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)
>
> - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
>
> > "… like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)
>
> > Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:4 Ephesians 1:8 Ephesians 1:19 Ephesians 1:21 Ephesians 2:1 Ephesians 2:19 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 5:19 Ephesians 5:27 Ephesians 5:27 Ephesians 6:5 Ephesians 6:10

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[^1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[^1]: English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (…) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.
>
> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk —**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> > Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> > “Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> > To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

> > Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:9 Ephesians 5:15 Ephesians 5:21-22 Ephesians 6:19

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

> Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

> When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, “This has never been seen before in Israel!” (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have “Oh” and “Ah.” The word “oh” here shows the speaker’s amazement.

> **Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word “Alas” below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as “how” or “why,” even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God’s judgments are.

> **How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)
>
> > "You **are** such a worthless person!"
>
> Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > "Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word "wow" shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

> They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak." (Mark 7:37 ULT)
>
> > "They were extremely astonished, saying, '**Wow**! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"
>
> Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)
>
> > "**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

> "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > "Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me**? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"
> > "**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

> How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > "His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Alas**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:20

Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.





Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we,” then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, “There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:5 Ephesians 1:11 Ephesians 1:12 Ephesians 2:14 Ephesians 2:18 Ephesians 3:20

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and

did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**.”
>
> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> or:
> At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:5 Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 1:20 Ephesians 2:2 Ephesians 2:6 Ephesians 2:15 Ephesians 2:17 Ephesians 2:18 Ephesians 3:1 Ephesians 3:6 Ephesians 3:6 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 3:12 Ephesians 3:14 Ephesians 3:18 Ephesians 4:1 Ephesians 4:7 Ephesians 4:11 Ephesians 4:13 Ephesians 5:15 Ephesians 5:19 Ephesians 5:19 Ephesians 5:21-22 Ephesians 5:25 Ephesians 5:28 Ephesians 6:5 Ephesians 6:9 Ephesians 6:12 Ephesians 6:13 Ephesians 6:20

Hendiadys

Description

In a hendiadys, a speaker uses two words that mean different things and that are connected with "and." These two words work together to express a single idea. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> … his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by "and" can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. "The blessed hope" and "appearing of the glory" refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, "our great God" and "Savior Jesus Christ" refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)

"A mouth" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes what comes from the mouth.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > For I will give you **wise words** …
>
> Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > for I will give you **words of wisdom**.
>
> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)
>
> > If you are **willingly obedient** …

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

> > if you **obey willingly** …

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> > We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 3:12

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **stone upon stone in you.** (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians.** (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,**
> but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed … (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)
>
> > The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
>
> When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do,** for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)
>
> > And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
> > or:
> >
> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:16 Ephesians 6:5

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase "come under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>
> > Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>
> > He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>
> > I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)
>
> > **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>
> > I am crying my **eyes out**

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:2 Ephesians 2:3 Ephesians 2:6 Ephesians 5:6

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else’s words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else’s belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> Then Jesus answered and said to them, “People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance.” (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of “the righteous,” he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God’s

commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh;
> "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **You know, for you were born then, and the number of your days is many!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate the irony in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. (Remember: The true meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)
>
> > **You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
> > or:
> > **You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

> I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)
>
> > I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call people who know that they are sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)
>
> > **You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh;
"present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen**, so we may know these things well. **Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

> 'Present your case,' says Yahweh;
> 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. **Can your idols bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well? **No!** We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
You know, for you were born then, and the number of your days is many! (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not**!

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:21

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a double negative is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel.
> (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)
>
> > "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
>
> > "Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
> >
> > or:
> > "Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:16

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)
>
> I am **the alpha and the omega**, **the first and the last**, **the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> … I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** …, (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)
>
> > **In all places**, people should praise Yahweh’s name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)
>
> > He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:19

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/ listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**," "family **tree**," "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.
- "Let us **go ahead** with our debate." Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- "You **defend** your theory well." Argument is spoken of as war.
- "A **flow** of words." Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, "Go and tell that fox …" (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)
>
> > Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)
>
> > It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
>
> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)
>
> > I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
> > Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:5 Ephesians 1:7 Ephesians 1:13 Ephesians 1:14 Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 1:22 Ephesians 1:23 Ephesians 2 Introduction Ephesians 2:1 Ephesians 2:2 Ephesians 2:6 Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 2:11 Ephesians 2:12 Ephesians 2:13 Ephesians 2:14 Ephesians 2:15 Ephesians 2:15 Ephesians 2:16 Ephesians 2:16 Ephesians 2:17 Ephesians 2:17 Ephesians 2:19 Ephesians 2:20 Ephesians 2:21 Ephesians 2:21 Ephesians 2:22 Ephesians 2:22 Ephesians 3:6 Ephesians 3:8 Ephesians 3:8 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 3:17 Ephesians 3:17 Ephesians 3:18 Ephesians 3:19 Ephesians 4:1 Ephesians 4:3 Ephesians 4:12 Ephesians 4:14 Ephesians 4:14 Ephesians 4:15 Ephesians 4:16 Ephesians 4:16 Ephesians 4:17 Ephesians 4:18 Ephesians 4:18 Ephesians 4:19 Ephesians 4:22 Ephesians 4:22 Ephesians 4:24 Ephesians 4:25 Ephesians 4:25 Ephesians 4:30 Ephesians 4:31 Ephesians 5:2 Ephesians 5:2 Ephesians 5:5 Ephesians 5:5 Ephesians 5:8 Ephesians 5:8 Ephesians 5:8 Ephesians 5:9 Ephesians 5:11 Ephesians 5:11 Ephesians 5:11 Ephesians 5:11 Ephesians 5:13 Ephesians 5:14 Ephesians 5:14 Ephesians 5:14 Ephesians 5:16 Ephesians 5:20 Ephesians 5:23 Ephesians 5:23 Ephesians 5:25 Ephesians 5:26 Ephesians 5:26 Ephesians 5:27 Ephesians 5:30 Ephesians 6 Introduction Ephesians 6:1 Ephesians 6:11 Ephesians 6:12 Ephesians 6:13 Ephesians 6:13 Ephesians 6:14 Ephesians 6:14 Ephesians 6:14 Ephesians 6:15 Ephesians 6:16 Ephesians 6:16 Ephesians 6:17 Ephesians 6:17 Ephesians 6:21 Ephesians 6:23

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> … and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)
>
> > He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)
>
> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)
>
> > "Who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:7 Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 1:20 Ephesians 1:22 Ephesians 2:2 Ephesians 2:3 Ephesians 2:11 Ephesians 2:11 Ephesians 2:13 Ephesians 2:14 Ephesians 2:16 Ephesians 3:13 Ephesians 4:26 Ephesians 5:16 Ephesians 5:19 Ephesians 6:5 Ephesians 6:6 Ephesians 6:19 Ephesians 6:20 Ephesians 6:22

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man."

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He."

Here is a sentence that shows that "rich" can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich," and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
> > The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)
>
> > Blessed are **people who are meek**.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:20 Ephesians 5:15

Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;
> their honored leaders go hungry, and
> their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples From the Bible

> Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
> and the rule will be on his shoulder.
> (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones." (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said “the Lord came.”

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
(2) If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

> For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)
>
> > For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am about to deliver** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers.”

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am delivering** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers.”

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:6 Ephesians 2:6

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
>
> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word "as."
>
> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
>
> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:22 Ephesians 4:22

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as," or "than."

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
> — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

> For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
> — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

> How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** … (Matthew 17:20)

> If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:1 Ephesians 5:8

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, "Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?" (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>
> > "**I** magnify the Lord."
>
> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>
> > **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him …
>
> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)
>
> > I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 3:14 Ephesians 6:12

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he or she is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" — Formal or Informal

Masculine and Feminine

Some languages have a **masculine** form and a **feminine** form of the word for "you." People use the **masculine** form when speaking to a man or boy and the **feminine** form when speaking to a woman or girl.

English does not make any of the above distinctions, so they are absent in the ULT.

Please be aware of this and use the appropriate forms of "you" if your language does make any of these distinctions.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians Introduction

Forms of 'You' — Singular

Description

Some languages have a **singular** form of "you" for when the word "you" refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word "you" refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of "you" and a plural form of "you." When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of "you" will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning "you," translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of "you" even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of 'You' — Singular to a Crowd.)

Examples From the Bible

> But he said, "All these things **I** have kept from my youth." But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, "One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, **sell** all and **distribute** to the poor, and **you** will have treasure in heaven—and **come**, **follow** me." (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said "I." This shows us that when Jesus said "you" he was referring only to the ruler and he used the singular form. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" need the singular form here, as well as for the verbs "sell," distribute," "come," and "follow."

> The angel said to him, "**Dress yourself** and **put on your** sandals." So he did that. He said to him, "**Put on your** outer garment and **follow** me." (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The angel used singular forms here and the context makes it clear that he was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" would need the singular form here for "yourself" and "your." Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs "dress," "put on," and "follow" need the form that indicates a singular subject.

> All the ones {who are} with me greet **you**. **Greet** the ones loving us in faith. Grace {be} with all of **you**. (Titus 3:15 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus, so most of the time the word "you" in this letter is singular and refers only to Titus. In this verse, the first "you" is singular, so the greeting is for Titus, as well as the instruction to greet the others there. The second "you," however, is plural, so the blessing is for Titus and for all of the believers there in Crete.

> "Having gone, **search** carefully for the young child, and after **you** have found him, **report** to me so that I also, having come, might worship him." (Matthew 2:8 ULT)

Since Herod is speaking to all of the learned men, the word "you" and the commands "search" and "report" are plural.

Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

(1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 5:14 Ephesians 6:1-3

Connect — Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Contrast Relationship

Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)
>
> > For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)
>
> > The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

> {David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)
>
> > [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:4 Ephesians 2:13 Ephesians 2:19 Ephesians 4:15 Ephesians 4:20 Ephesians 4:28 Ephesians 4:29 Ephesians 4:32 Ephesians 5:3 Ephesians 5:4 Ephesians 5:8 Ephesians 5:11 Ephesians 5:13 Ephesians 5:15 Ephesians 5:17 Ephesians 5:18 Ephesians 5:27 Ephesians 5:29 Ephesians 6:4 Ephesians 6:6 Ephesians 6:12

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison**. (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

> Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian**. (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with "in order to."

> Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes**. Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God's ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

> Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

> Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with "and." Then the word "so" marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear. (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!" (Ruth 2:16 ULT)
>
> > "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!"

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)
>
> > The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us."

(2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17bULT)
>
> > "… keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**." or: "… keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**."

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)
>
> > But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance**.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:7 Ephesians 2:9 Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 2:15 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 3:16 Ephesians 4:14 Ephesians 4:16 Ephesians 4:28 Ephesians 4:29 Ephesians 5:26 Ephesians 5:27 Ephesians 5:27 Ephesians 6:3 Ephesians 6:13 Ephesians 6:18 Ephesians 6:19 Ephesians 6:20 Ephesians 6:21 Ephesians 6:22

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. "Because" connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by "so that." Notice that the term "so that" often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> "Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God." (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.

(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.

(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:15 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 2:8 Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 2:11 Ephesians 2:12 Ephesians 2:14 Ephesians 2:18 Ephesians 2:19 Ephesians 3:1 Ephesians 3:13 Ephesians 3:14 Ephesians 3:18 Ephesians 3:19 Ephesians 4:1 Ephesians 4:8 Ephesians 4:17 Ephesians 4:18 Ephesians 4:18 Ephesians 4:25 Ephesians 4:25 Ephesians 5:1 Ephesians 5:6 Ephesians 5:7 Ephesians 5:8 Ephesians 5:9 Ephesians 5:14 Ephesians 5:15 Ephesians 5:16 Ephesians 5:17 Ephesians 5:23 Ephesians 5:30 Ephesians 5:31 Ephesians 6:1 Ephesians 6:12 Ephesians 6:13 Ephesians 6:14

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

> It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.
>
> **Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word “instead” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

> **Therefore,** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word "therefore" links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. "Therefore" usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word "and" links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word "but" contrasts what one group of people will be called in God's kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

> We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God's servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words "so that" connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. "Instead" contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God's servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
(3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so."

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "instead" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like "therefore," a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word "but" is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word "but" would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So "and" might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

> **Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 3:17 Ephesians 3:18 Ephesians 3:19

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

> After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and … a voice came out of the heavens saying, "**This is my beloved Son**. I am very pleased with him." (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

> Jesus … said, "I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth … no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**." (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that "Father" and "Son" are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

> Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit**. (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

> I **love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)
>
> **No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son**. (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms "Father" and "Son" also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

> Jesus said, "Father, … glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you … I glorified you on the earth … Now Father, glorify me … with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made**." (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)
>
> But in these last days, {God the Father} has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory and **the very exact representation of his being**. He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)
>
> Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father**. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?" (John 14:9 ULT)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:13

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

> Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, “Yahweh be with you.” And they said to him, “May Yahweh bless you.” (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul’s second letter to Timothy:

> Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)
> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Add a verb if that is natural in your language.
2. Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.
3. Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

> The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb ‘be.’ However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the ‘grace’ from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide ‘God’ as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them.”

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God’s presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

> “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

“Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them.”

“Our sister, by God’s power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them.”

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:2 Ephesians 3:20 Ephesians 6:23

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means "king of righteousness," and then also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)
>
> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
>
> > You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**
>
> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)
>
> > At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)
>
> > She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’),** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)
>
> > She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why

the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> … a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)
>
> > … a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)
>
> > a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)
>
> > It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians Introduction

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

> And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:20

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT New Testament on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. The ULT Old Testament is based on the Westminster Leningrad Codex, which is considered to be the best representative of the ancient copies. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest copies. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house … 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more.”] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Psalm 100:3 ULT follows the Westminster Leningrad Codex. It says:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and not we**,

There are some other ancient copies that say:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and we are his**,

There is an unfoldingWord® Translation Note at that place to tell the translator about this other reading and that either one is an acceptable choice.

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include a footnote about the alternate reading such as the one that the ULT provides or one in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. [16] If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians Introduction

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
> > Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
> > Your sins … will be white like **milk**.
> >
> > Your sins … will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
>
> > Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
>
> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)
>
> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)
>
> > to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:29

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

> - Setting includes:
> - where the story takes place
> - when the story takes place
> - who is present when the story begins
> - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son (as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces a section of background information about Jesus' age and ancestors (Luke 3:23-38). The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain**, **rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said … (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said …."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain

how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> **And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son **(as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information. A set of parentheses is also a way to mark background information. Here, "as it was assumed" gives background information to the phrase, "He was the son." People assumed that Joseph was Jesus' father, although his true father was God.

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram**. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)
>
> > "**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 3:3

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> **In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

> **And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

> **The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

> **Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

> **Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

> **Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he

did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

> 6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

> There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

> One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

> As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him … (Mark 2:14a ULT)

> As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him …

> As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

> As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as "another time," or "someone."

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)
> — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

> **After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

> **Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.
>
> > **Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.
>
> > Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.
>
> > **This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come**.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:10

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

> Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** … **This man** came to Jesus at night … Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as "This man" and "him" when he has become an old participant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples From the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as "There was a man," as in the example below. The phrase "There was" tells us that this man existed. The word "a" in "a man" tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

> **Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as "his wife." This phrase shows her relationship to him.

> Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

> Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun "his," and his wife is referred to with the pronoun "she."

> **His wife** was barren and **she** had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to by the noun phrase "the wife."

> The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the wife** and he said to her … (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

> Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
(2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

> Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth … (Acts 4:36-37 ULT)
> — Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.
>
> > There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

> And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.
>
> > It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

> Joseph’s master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.
>
> > Joseph’s master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:13

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)
>
> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **he** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:5 Ephesians 2:8 Ephesians 5:12 Ephesians 5:25 Ephesians 5:31 Ephesians 6:20

Appendix: Translation Words

adoption, adopt, adopted

Definition:

The terms “adopt” and “adoption” refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses “adoption” and “adopt” in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase “experience adoption as sons” could be translated as “be adopted by God as his children” or “become God’s (spiritual) children.”
- To “wait for the adoption of sons” could be translated as “look forward to becoming God’s children” or “wait expectantly for God to receive as children.”
- The phrase “adopt them” could be translated as “receive them as his own children” or “make them his own (spiritual) children.”

(See also: heir, inherit, spirit)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 1:5
- Galatians 4:3-5
- Romans 8:14-15
- Romans 8:23
- Romans 9:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G52060

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:5

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0543, G02810

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 3:21

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
- It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus' **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles'** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles'** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 2:20 Ephesians 3:5 Ephesians 4:11

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: dominion, king, ruler, power)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:21 Ephesians 2:2 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 6:12

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26

- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:13 Ephesians 1:19

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:5 Ephesians 6:21

blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:10
- 1 Thessalonians 3:11-13
- 2 Peter 3:14
- Colossians 1:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 2:15
- Philippians 3:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5352, H5355, H8535, G02730, G02740, G02980, G02990, G03380, G04100, G04230

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:4 Ephesians 5:27

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G09870, G09880, G09890

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:31

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:3

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:3

call, called, call out, called out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out,” in this sense, mean to speak loudly.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- In some contexts the terms “call” and “call out” mean to loudly ask for help.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.

(See also: pray, cry, call to summon, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 4:1 Ephesians 4:1 Ephesians 4:4 Ephesians 4:4

Christ, Messiah

Definition:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:2 Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:5 Ephesians 1:10 Ephesians 1:12 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 1:20 Ephesians 2:5 Ephesians 2:6 Ephesians 2:7 Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 2:12 Ephesians 2:13 Ephesians 2:13 Ephesians 2:20 Ephesians 3:1 Ephesians 3:6 Ephesians 3:8 Ephesians 3:11 Ephesians 3:17 Ephesians 3:19 Ephesians 3:21 Ephesians 4:7 Ephesians 4:12 Ephesians 4:13 Ephesians 4:15 Ephesians 4:20 Ephesians 4:32 Ephesians 5:2 Ephesians 5:5 Ephesians 5:14 Ephesians 5:20 Ephesians 5:23 Ephesians 5:25 Ephesians 5:29 Ephesians 6:5 Ephesians 6:6 Ephesians 6:23 Ephesians 6:24

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to all people who believe in Jesus. Sometimes “church” refers to a part of that larger group who regularly met together in a certain place, such as the “church at Ephesus.”

- This term literally refers to an assembly or congregation of people who were “called out” of the general population to meet together for a special purpose.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home to pray together and to hear and discuss scripture. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, believe, Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G15770

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:22 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 3:21 Ephesians 5:23 Ephesians 5:25 Ephesians 5:27 Ephesians 5:29

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.

- The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."

- The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.

- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who do not belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."

- The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25

- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11
- Colossians 2:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:3** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **5:5** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:11 Ephesians 2:11

cornerstone

Definition:

The term "cornerstone" refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its "cornerstone."
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "cornerstone" could also be translated as "main building stone" or "foundation stone."
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, "a foundation stone used for the corner of a building."
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means "large stone" (such as "boulder") but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

Bible References:

- Acts 4:11
- Ephesians 2:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0068, H6438, H7218, G02040, G11370, G27760, G30370

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:20

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.

- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:12

cross

Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: crucify, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:17
- Colossians 2:15
- Galatians 6:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 9:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.

- **40:2** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G47160

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:16

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:21

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:4

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”

- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”

- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”

- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”

- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”

- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”

- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5 Introduction

evangelist

Definition:

An “evangelist” is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

- The literal meaning of “evangelist” is “someone who preaches the good news.”
- Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God’s kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
- All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
- Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called “evangelists.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “evangelist” could be translated as “someone who preaches the good news” or “teacher of the good news” or “person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)” or “good news proclaimer.”

(See also: good news, spirit, gift)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:5
- Ephesians 4:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G20990

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:11

evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "evil" can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:16 Ephesians 6:12 Ephesians 6:13

exhort, exhortation

Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 1 Timothy 5:2
- Luke 3:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G38670, G38700, G38740, G43890

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:1

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:15 Ephesians 2 Introduction Ephesians 2:8 Ephesians 3:12 Ephesians 3:17 Ephesians 4 Introduction Ephesians 4:13 Ephesians 6:16 Ephesians 6:23

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
- In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
- Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

(See also: believe, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** "If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 6:21

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:5

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms “fear” often refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect,” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear Yahweh” could be translated as “reverence Yahweh” or “deeply respect Yahweh.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”

(See also: awe, Yahweh, Lord, marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:5

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:4 Ephesians 5:17

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:7 Ephesians 4:32 Ephesians 4:32 Ephesians 5 Introduction

Gentile

Definition:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”.
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Jew)

Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G14820, G14840, G16720

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:11 Ephesians 3:1 Ephesians 3:6 Ephesians 3:8 Ephesians 4:17

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”

- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:6 Ephesians 1:12 Ephesians 1:14 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 3:13 Ephesians 3:16 Ephesians 3:21 Ephesians 5:27

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being" or "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god." NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word "god," it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"

- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 2:4 Ephesians 2:8 Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 2:16 Ephesians 2:19 Ephesians 2:22 Ephesians 3:2 Ephesians 3:9 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 3:19 Ephesians 4:18 Ephesians 4:24 Ephesians 4:32 Ephesians 5:1 Ephesians 5:2 Ephesians 5:5 Ephesians 5:6 Ephesians 6:6 Ephesians 6:11 Ephesians 6:13

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Definition:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21

- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:2 Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 2:18 Ephesians 3:14 Ephesians 4:6 Ephesians 5:20 Ephesians 6:23

good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness

Definition:

The term "good" generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is "good" could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone or "cause someone to prosper."
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: righteous, prosper, evil)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:5 Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 4:28 Ephesians 4:29 Ephesians 5:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **2:4** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **8:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news/message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: kingdom, sacrifice, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"
- **26:3** Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord's favor."
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:13 Ephesians 2:17 Ephesians 3:6
Ephesians 3:8 Ephesians 6:15 Ephesians 6:19

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:2 Ephesians 1:6 Ephesians 1:7
Ephesians 2:5 Ephesians 2:7 Ephesians 2:8
Ephesians 3:2 Ephesians 3:8 Ephesians 4:7
Ephesians 4:29 Ephesians 6:24

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we cannot directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:10 Ephesians 1:20
Ephesians 2:6 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 3:15
Ephesians 4:10 Ephesians 6:9 Ephesians 6:12

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often said to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."

- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."

- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6
- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.

- **9:12** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:2** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:5** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:4 Ephesians 2:21 Ephesians 3:5 Ephesians 4:24 Ephesians 5:27

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Definition:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:13 Ephesians 2:18 Ephesians 2:22 Ephesians 3:5 Ephesians 3:16 Ephesians 4:3 Ephesians 4:4 Ephesians 4:30 Ephesians 5:18 Ephesians 6:17 Ephesians 6:18

hope, hoped

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" also has the meaning of "trust," as in "my hope is in the Lord." It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as "confidence." This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have "no hope" means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to "hope" could also be translated as to "wish" or to "desire" or to "expect."
- The expression "nothing to hope for" could be translated as "nothing to trust in" or "no expectation of anything good"
- To "have no hope" could be translated as "have no expectation of anything good" or "have no security" or "be sure that nothing good will happen."
- The expression "have set your hopes on" could also be translated as "have put your confidence in" or "have been trusting in."
- The phrase "I find hope in your Word" could also be translated as "I am confident that your Word is true" or "Your Word helps me trust in you" or "When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed."
- Phrases such as "hope in" God could also be translated a, "trust in God" or "know for sure that God will do what he has promised" or "be certain that God is faithful."

(See also: bless, confidence, good, obey, trust, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:12 Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 2:12 Ephesians 4:4

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term "humble" describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase "be humble" could be translated as "do not be prideful."
- "Humble yourself before God" could be translated as "Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness."

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** "God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:2

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: Christ, Lord, Jesus, believe, faith)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:5
- 2 Corinthians 2:17
- 2 Timothy 1:1
- Galatians 1:22
- Galatians 2:17
- Philemon 1:6
- Revelation 1:10
- Romans 9:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G15190, G29620, G55470

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:10 Ephesians 1:12 Ephesians 1:15 Ephesians 1:20 Ephesians 2:5 Ephesians 2:6 Ephesians 2:7 Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 2:13 Ephesians 2:21 Ephesians 3:6 Ephesians 3:11 Ephesians 3:21 Ephesians 4:1 Ephesians 4:17 Ephesians 4:21 Ephesians 4:32 Ephesians 5:8 Ephesians 6:1 Ephesians 6:10 Ephesians 6:21

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the things that are received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15

- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:14 Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 5 Introduction Ephesians 5:5

Israel, Israelites

Definition:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”

- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of __Israel __ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of __Israel __ its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished __Israel __ again for worshiping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:12

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Definition:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2

- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:2 Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:5 Ephesians 1:15 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 2:6 Ephesians 2:7 Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 2:13 Ephesians 2:20 Ephesians 3:1 Ephesians 3:6 Ephesians 3:11 Ephesians 3:21 Ephesians 4:21 Ephesians 5:20 Ephesians 6:23 Ephesians 6:24

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- Depending on the context, the term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:2** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”
- **34:3** Jesus told another story, “The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”
- **34:4** “The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again.”
- **34:5** “The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value.”
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.

- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G09320, G23160, G37720

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:5

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”

- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.
- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, “What is written in **God’s law**?”
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good?’ There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God’s laws**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:15

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lord" generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."

- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.

- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."

- In the ULT and UST, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.

- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.

- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1

- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **43:9** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:2 Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:15 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 2:21 Ephesians 3:11 Ephesians 4:1 Ephesians 4:17 Ephesians 5:8 Ephesians 5:17 Ephesians 5:19 Ephesians 5:20 Ephesians 6:1 Ephesians 6:4 Ephesians 6:5 Ephesians 6:9 Ephesians 6:9 Ephesians 6:10 Ephesians 6:21 Ephesians 6:23 Ephesians 6:24

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
    - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
    - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
    - In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
    - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
    - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.

- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2
- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:8** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:4 Ephesians 1:6 Ephesians 1:15 Ephesians 2:4 Ephesians 2:4 Ephesians 3:17 Ephesians 3:19 Ephesians 4:2 Ephesians 4:15 Ephesians 4:16 Ephesians 5:2 Ephesians 5:2 Ephesians 5:25 Ephesians 5:25 Ephesians 5:28 Ephesians 5:28 Ephesians 5:28 Ephesians 6:23 Ephesians 6:24

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:4

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:16 Ephesians 6:18 Ephesians 6:18 Ephesians 6:18 Ephesians 6:18

predestine, predestined

Definition:

The terms “predestine” and “predestined” refer to deciding or planning beforehand that something will happen.

- This term especially refers to God predestining people to receive eternal life.
- Sometimes the word “foreordain” is used, which also means to decide beforehand.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “predestine” could also be translated as “decide before” or “decide ahead of time.”
- The term “predestined” could be translated as “decided long ago” or “planned ahead of time” or “decided beforehand.”
- A phrase such as “predestined us” could be translated as “decided long ago that we” or “already decided ahead of time that we.”
- Note that the translation of this term should be different from the translation of the term “foreknew.”

(See also: foreknew)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G43090

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1 Introduction Ephesians 1:5
Ephesians 1:11

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”Â
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.

- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:13 Ephesians 2:12 Ephesians 3:6

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”

- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** “This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:20 Ephesians 3:5 Ephesians 4:11

psalm

Definition:

The term “psalm” refers to a sacred song, often in the form of a poem that was written to be sung.

- The Old Testament Book of Psalms has a collection of these songs written by King David and other Israelites such as Moses, Solomon, and Asaph, among others.
- The psalms were used by the nation of Israel in their worship of God.
- Psalms can be used to express joy, faith, and reverence, as well as pain and sorrow.
- In the New Testament, Christians are instructed to sing psalms to God as a way of worshiping him.

(See also: David, faith, joy, Moses, holy)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:33
- Acts 13:35
- Colossians 3:16
- Luke 20:42

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2158, H2167, H4210, G55670, G55680

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:19 Ephesians 5:19

reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

Definition:

To “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “make peace” between people who were formerly enemies of each other. “Reconciliation” is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could be translated as “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: peace, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:19
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Matthew 5:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 5:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2398, H3722, G06040, G12590, G24330, G26430, G26440

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:16

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:7 Ephesians 1:14 Ephesians 4:30 Ephesians 5:16

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."

- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

Ephesians References:

Ephesians Introduction Ephesians 4:24
Ephesians 5:9 Ephesians 6:1 Ephesians 6:14

saint

Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: holy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2623, H6918, H6922, G00400

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:15 Ephesians 1:18
Ephesians 2:19 Ephesians 3:8 Ephesians 3:18
Ephesians 4:12 Ephesians 5:3 Ephesians 6:18

sanctify, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, holy, set apart)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Genesis 2:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 6:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G00370, G00380

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:26

Satan, devil, evil one

Definition:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil, kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:27 Ephesians 6:11 Ephesians 6:16

save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."

- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:13 Ephesians 2:5 Ephesians 2:8 Ephesians 6:17

Savior, savior

Definition:

The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the Old Testament, God appointed judges to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them. These judges are sometimes called “saviors.” The Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: deliver, Jesus, save, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:10
- 2 Peter 2:20
- Acts 5:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 1:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3467, G49900

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:23

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people do not know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who did not keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people do not see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.

- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2 Introduction Ephesians 2:1
Ephesians 4:26

Son of God, the Son

Definition:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18

- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**.”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**.”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God**.”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God**!”
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:13

soul, self

Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person’s awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:6

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."

- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:3 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 2:2 Ephesians 4:23 Ephesians 5:19 Ephesians 6 Introduction Ephesians 6:12

temple, house, house of God

Definition:

A temple is a building dedicated to the worship of a specific diety where that diety was thought to dwell. Nations around Israel had temples dedicated to their various gods. The temple in Israel was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the first temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46

- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:21

trespass

Definition:

The term "trespass" means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word "transgression," but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms "sin" and "transgress," especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
- Some languages may have an expression like "cross the line" that could be used to translate "trespass."
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as "transgress" and "sin."

(See also: disobey, iniquity, sin, transgress)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 2:13
- Ephesians 2:1
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 5:17
- Romans 5:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G02640, G39000

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:7 Ephesians 2:1 Ephesians 2:5

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 1:9 Ephesians 1:11 Ephesians 5:17 Ephesians 6:6

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:8 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 5:15

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."

- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."

- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."

- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."

- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."

- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."

- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7
- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."

- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:26 Ephesians 6:17

world, worldly

Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went…"
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."

- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:4 Ephesians 2:2 Ephesians 2:12

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God’s “wrath,” make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, “wrath” often refers to God’s righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The “wrath of God” can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God’s wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include “intense anger” or “righteous judgment” or “anger.”
- God’s wrath is just and holy. When talking about God’s wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:3 Ephesians 4:31 Ephesians 5:6

Ephesus, Ephesian

Definition:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, Paul, Timothy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Acts 19:1
- Ephesians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G21790, G21800, G21810

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1

Paul, Saul

Definition:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 8:3
- Acts 9:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 1:1
- Philemon 1:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:6** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.

- **46:1** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:2** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul**! **Saul**! Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:5** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:6** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:9** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:1** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul**."
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G39720, G45690

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:1 Ephesians 3:1

Tychicus

Definition:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

- Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
- Paul described him as "beloved" and "faithful."
- Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, beloved, Colossae, Ephesus, faithful, good news, minister)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Colossians 4:9
- Titus 3:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: G51900

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:21

admonish, warned, aware

Definition:

The term “admonish” means to firmly warn or advise someone.

- Usually “admonish” means to advise someone not to do something.
- In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
- The word “admonish” could be translated as “encourage not to sin” or “urge someone to not sin.”

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 9:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2094, H5749, G35600, G38670, G55370

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:4

age, aged, old, old age, years old

Definition:

In this sense, the term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. In the Bible the terms “aged” and “old” are both used to describe someone who has lived a for many years.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The term “aged” could also be translated as “old” or “very old” depending on context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G01650, G01660

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:21 Ephesians 2:2 Ephesians 2:7 Ephesians 3:9

age, era, time

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “age” refers to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience toward God fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign in a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could be translated as “era” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”
- The phrase “end of the age” (used in Jesus’ words in Matthew 28:20) means “end of this period of history” or “end of this present age” and refers to the end of this present age at Jesus’ second coming.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2165, H6256, H6471, G21190, G21210, G22350, G25400, G35680, G41830, G42180, G44550, G51190, G55500, G55510, G56100

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:10 Ephesians 2:12 Ephesians 5:16 Ephesians 6:18

armor, armory

Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: faith, Holy Spirit, peace, save, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 6:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22
- Nehemiah 4:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G36960, G38330

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:11 Ephesians 6:13

bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to “produce” or “give birth to.”

- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit”
- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “produce” or “give birth to.”

(Translation suggestions: fruit)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3205, H3209, H3211, H5375, G01420, G03990, G04300, G09410, G10800, G41600, G47220, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:2

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:30 Ephesians 5:16 Ephesians 6:13

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 3:14

breastplate, breastpiece

Definition:

The term “breastplate” refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term “breastpiece” refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A “breastplate” used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The “breastpiece” worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term “breastplate” could include “metal protective chest covering” or “armor piece protecting the chest.”
- The term “breastpiece” could be translated with a word that means “priestly clothing covering the chest” or “priestly garment piece” or “front piece of priest’s clothing.”

(See also: armor, high priest, pierce, priest, temple, warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Isaiah 59:17
- Revelation 9:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2833, H8302, G23820

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:14

citizen, citizenship

Definition:

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as “inhabitant” or “official resident.”
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called “citizens” of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God’s kingdom.

(See: kingdom, Paul, province, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 21:39-40
- Isaiah 3:3
- Luke 15:15
- Luke 19:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6440, G41750, G41770, G48470

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:12 Ephesians 2:19

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:22 Ephesians 4:29

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:11

courage, courageous, valor

Definition:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance or when he faces the threat of emotional or physical pain with emotional strength.
- The expression “take courage” means “do not be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

Translation Suggestions

(See also: encourage, confidence, fear, strength)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0553, H2428, H2865, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G43890, G51110

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:22

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”

- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:10 Ephesians 3:9 Ephesians 4:24

deceive, lie, deception, illusion

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:14 Ephesians 4:22 Ephesians 5:6

doctrine, teaching, belief, beliefs, instruction, knowledge

Definition:

The word "doctrine" literally means "teaching." It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, "doctrine" refers to all teachings about God—Father, Son and Holy Spirit—including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word "doctrine" is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as "teaching."

(See also: teach)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 3:16-17
- Mark 7:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3948, G13190, G13220, G20850

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:14

drunk, drunkard

Definition:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:18

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of a people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:10 Ephesians 3:15 Ephesians 4:9 Ephesians 6:3

envy, covet, jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms "envy" and "envious" refer to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities or abilities. The term "covet" means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, possessions, or abilities.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse.
- In some contexts the terms "jealous" and "jealousy" can mean "envy."

Translation Suggestions

- When the terms "jealous" and "jealousy" refer to being wrongfully "envious" of someone the terms "envious" or "envy" could be used if the context permits.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:19 Ephesians 5:3 Ephesians 5:5

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0251, H0272, H0504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G10850, G36140, G36240, G39650

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 3:15

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, false god, prostitute, faithful)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26

- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:3 Ephesians 5:5

foundation, founder, founded

Definition:

Used in this sense, the verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
- The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
- Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:4 Ephesians 2:20 Ephesians 3:17

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” produces a lot of fruit. Something that is “unfruitful” does not produce fruit.

- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the phrase “the fruit of every tree” refers to the fruit that comes from these trees.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.

Translation Suggestions:

- When the term “fruit” refers to what a specific plant produces, the specific term for the fruit of that plant can be used, otherwise, use a general word for the edible things that plants produce, if possible. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- When used literally, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much fruit.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When used literally, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:11
- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:9 Ephesians 5:11

generation

Definition:

The term "generation" in this sense refers to a period of time approximately equal to the lifetime of a person. This could be as long as 100 years. This period of time also came to be measured by the time between the adulthood of one person and the adulthood of his or her offspring, or a 30–40-year time span.

Translation Suggestions

- When referring to the past, "generations" could be translated as "during the times of our ancestors" or "when people lived before us."
- When referring to the future, "generations" could be translated as "lifespans" or "times of people who will come afterwards" or "when our descendants are living."
- The phrase "in his own generation" could be translated as "while he lived" or "during his time"
- The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "from the time of people living now and for always" or "as long as people live on the earth" or "from now to all future time periods" or "for all time."

(See also: descendant, ancestor)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H8435, G01650, G10740

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 3:5 Ephesians 3:21

hard, harder

Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, challenging, or requires great diligence and persistence to be done.

- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “persistent” or “diligently” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- Depending on context the term “harder” could also be translated as “more difficult” or “more diligently”
- In some contexts “hard” could be translated as “heavy” or “heavily.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2388, H3515, H6381, H7185, H7186, G03180, G14190, G14220, G14230, G25320, G28730, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:18

heir

Definition:

An “heir” is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses “heir” in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God’s children, Christians are said to be “joint heirs” with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as “co-heirs” or “fellow heirs” or “heirs together with.”
- The term “heir” could be translated as “person receiving benefits” or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, inherit)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1121, H3423, G28160, G28180, G28200, G47890

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 3:6

household, house

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Used in this sense, the term “house” means “household” and refers to all the people who live together in one house or in a multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Managing a household would have involved directing the servants and also taking care of the property.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “family.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your household” could be translated as “those who live in your house” or “your family.”

(See also: house dwelling structure, house descendants nation)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1397, G36090, G36095, G36140, G36150, G36240

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:19

know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “know” and “knowledge” mean generally to understand something. It can also mean to be aware of a fact. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”

- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing facts should be used when translating this sense of the word “know.”

(See also: know-relationship, law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1844, H1847, H3045, H3046, H3318, G00500, G00560, G03190, G10970, G11070, G11080, G11100, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G42670

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:9 Ephesians 1:17 Ephesians 1:18 Ephesians 3:3 Ephesians 3:5 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 3:19 Ephesians 3:19 Ephesians 4:13 Ephesians 5:5 Ephesians 6:9 Ephesians 6:19 Ephesians 6:21 Ephesians 6:21 Ephesians 6:22

labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “toil” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3021, H4399, H4522, H4639, H5647, H5656, H5998, H6001, H6089, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:28

lust, lustful, passion, desire

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: adultery, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:3 Ephesians 4:22

manager, steward, stewardship

Definition:

The term "manager" or "steward" in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master's property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term "manager" is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "supervisor" or "household organizer" or "servant who manages" or "person who organizes."

(See also: servant)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:4-5
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 8:3
- Luke 16:2
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 1:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G20120, G36210, G36230

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:10 Ephesians 3:2 Ephesians 3:9

member, body part

Definition:

The term “member” refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as “members” of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the “head” of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called “members” of these groups.

(See also: body, Pharisee, council)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:2
- Romans 12:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G10100, G31960, G36090

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:25 Ephesians 5:30

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:10

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To "have the mind of Christ" means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
- The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
- The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
- The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
- The expression "changed his mind and went" could also be translated as "decided differently and went" or "decided to go after all" or "changed his opinion and went."
- The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29

- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:3 Ephesians 4:17 Ephesians 4:23

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term "multiply" means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to "multiply" and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as "increase" or "cause to increase" or "greatly increase in number" or "become greater in number" or "become more numerous."
- The phrase "greatly multiply your pain" could also be translated as "cause your pain to become more severe" or "cause you to experience much more pain."
- To "multiply horses" means to "greedily keep acquiring more horses" or to "get large numbers of horses."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:8

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something that we cannot know or understand unless God reveals it or explains it to us.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden truth” or “previously unknown thing.”

(See also: Christ, Gentile, good news, Jew, true)

Bible References:

- Colossians 4:2-4
- Ephesians 6:19-20
- Luke 8:9-10
- Mark 4:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1219, H7328, G34660

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:9 Ephesians 3:3 Ephesians 3:9 Ephesians 6:19

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: adversary, parable, people group, Samaria)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26-28
- Ephesians 4:25-27
- Galatians 5:14
- James 2:8
- John 9:8-9
- Luke 1:58
- Matthew 5:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G10690, G20870, G40400, G41390

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:25

ordinance, regulation, requirement, strict law, custom

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term "ordain."

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term "ordinance" could be translated as "public decree" or "regulation" or "law," depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 2:15

partial, partiality

Definition:

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 1:17
- Malachi 2:9
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 2:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5234, H6440, G09910, G15190, G29830, G42990, G43830

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:9

patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- 2 Peter 3:8-9
- Hebrews 6:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 37:7
- Revelation 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0750, H0753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G04200, G04630, G19330, G31140, G31150, G31160, G52780, G52810

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:2

peace, peaceful, peacemaker

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:2 Ephesians 2:14 Ephesians 2:15 Ephesians 2:17 Ephesians 2:17 Ephesians 4:3 Ephesians 6:15 Ephesians 6:23

perfect, complete

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "perfect" means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be "perfect" or "complete," that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term "perfect" also has the meaning of being "complete" or "whole."
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "without flaw" or "without error" or "flawless" or "without fault" or "not having any faults."

(See also: blemish)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:13

persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: patient, trial)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:11
- Ephesians 6:18
- James 5:9-11
- Luke 8:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G31150, G43430, G52810

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:18

pledge

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- To “pledge” could be translate as to “formally commit to” or to “strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: promise, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:4-5
- Exodus 22:26
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:14

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Definition:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship, inherit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:14

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!"
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:6 Ephesians 1:12 Ephesians 1:14

provoke, provoked, provocation

Definition:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G20420, G38630, G39470, G39490, G42920

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:4

quench, quenched, unquenchable

Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people..

(See also: fruit, gift, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:19
- Ezekiel 20:47
- Isaiah 1:31
- Jeremiah 21:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1846, H3518, H7665, G07620, G45700

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:16

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:21 Ephesians 2:2 Ephesians 3:10 Ephesians 6:12

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:2 Ephesians 5:2

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

When referring to an action, the term "seal" means to close an object with something (usually called a "seal") that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal. When referring to an object, the term "seal" refers to something that was made of wood or metal or stone that was formed into a design so that it could be used to stamp something (make an imprint on it).

- A seal was marked with a design to show who it belonged to.
- Seals were used to mark different objects for the purpose of showing that the thing belonged to the owner or had come from the owner or was approved by the owner.
- Seals were used to indicate the authenticity of something as deriving from the owner or being approved by the owner or belonging to the owner in some way.
- Sometimes a seal was put on the top of a ring so that the owner of the ring could press the seal down into something and make an imprint on it.
- Sometimes seals were attached to a string or cord and worn around the neck.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:13 Ephesians 4:30

servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women

Definition:

A "servant" refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's direction. In the Bible, "servant" and "slave" are mostly interchangeable terms. The term "serve" generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- In the Bible the words "young man" or "young woman" often mean "servant" or "slave." This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. "her young women" which could be translated as "her servants" or "her slaves."

Translation Suggestions

- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.

- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."
- Often, when a person referred to himself as "your servant" he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: enslave, works, obey, house, lord)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's for Servant: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570

Strong's for Serve: H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:5 Ephesians 6:6

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5
- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:12

shield

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, obey, Satan, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 18:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G23750

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:16

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:17

teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: disciple, preach)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:12-15
- Ephesians 4:11-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Habakkuk 2:18
- James 3:2
- John 1:37-39
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"
- **28:1** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?"
- **37:2** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, "Let's go back to Judea." "But **Teacher**," the disciples answered, "Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!"
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, **Teacher**," and kissed him.
- **49:3** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3384, H3925, G13200, G25670, G35470, G55720

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:11

tremble, shake, shaken, quake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 6:5

tribulation, distress, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: earth, teach, wrath)

Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G23470, G44230

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 3:13

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 1:8 Ephesians 3:20 Ephesians 4:18 Ephesians 5:17

vain, vanity

Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as “vain” things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that there the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty,” “useless,” “hopeless,” “worthless,” “meaningless,” etc.

(See also: false god, worthy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 2:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 2:29-31
- Matthew 15:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G09450, G15000, G27560, G27580, G27610, G31510, G31520, G31530, G31550

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 4:17

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

Ephesians References:

Ephesians 5:18